



# **Texas Food Establishment Rules**

## **Field Inspection Manual**

**Texas Department of State Health Services  
Division for Regulatory Services  
Environmental and Consumer Safety Section  
Policy, Standards, and Quality Assurance Unit  
Food Establishments Group**

**September 2006**

# **Texas Food Establishment Rules**

25 TAC §§229.161 – 229.171, 229.173 – 229.175

**Texas Department of State Health Services  
Division for Regulatory Service  
Environmental and Consumer Safety Section  
Policy Standards and Quality Assurance Unit  
Food Establishments Group MC 1987  
P.O. Box 149347  
Austin, Texas 78714-9347**

**Effective Date: March 15, 2006**

## PREFACE

This Field Inspection Manual consists of the Texas Food Establishment Rules in a format designed to promote uniformity in the application of the rules. The current Texas Food Establishment Rules, or “TFER”, were adopted by the Texas Health and Human Services Commission in February 2006 and became effective in March 2006. All critical items are underlined to assist the user in verifying those portions of the rules that are critical and non-critical. Also, the respective Item Numbers have been assigned to the critical items that correspond to the retail food inspection form. The appropriate Item Numbers are placed next the applicable subsections and paragraphs. The Item Numbers are not re-listed unless there is a change in Item Number within the subsection or paragraph or there is a new page. This will promote and ensure uniformity in the application of the TFER when using the inspection form found in the rules. A comprehensive index is also provided to enhance the use of the Manual.

These item interpretations were developed with input from the Southwest Region FDA Regional Food Specialists, critical item interpretations in the 2001 and 2005 FDA Food Codes, and the staff of the Food Establishments Group. We would like to specifically acknowledge Sandra Sugarek and Zachary Holbrooks of the Policy, Standards, and Quality Assurance Unit, Food Establishments Group for their fine work in revising and editing this Manual.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

§229.161 Purpose.....	1
§229.162 Definitions.....	1
§229.163 Management and Personnel .....	20
(a) Responsibility, assignment .....	20
(b) Knowledge, demonstration .....	20
(c) Duties, person in charge.....	22
(d) Disease or medical condition .....	23
(e) Hands and arms, clean condition .....	28
(f) Hands and arms cleaning procedure .....	28
(g) Special handwash procedures .....	29
(h) When to wash.....	29
(i) Where to wash.....	29
(j) Hand sanitizers.....	29
(k) Fingernail maintenance.....	30
(l) Jewelry prohibition.....	31
(m) Outer clothing clean condition.....	31
(n) Eating, drinking, or using tobacco .....	31
(o) Discharges from the eyes, nose, and mouth.....	31
(p) Hair restraints, effectiveness .....	31
(q) Handling prohibition.....	32
§229.164 Food .....	33
(a) Condition safe, unadulterated, and honestly presented.....	33
(b) Approved sources.....	33
(c) Specifications for receiving .....	37
(d) Molluscan shellfish, maintaining identification.....	40
(e) Preventing contamination by employees .....	42
(f) Preventing food and ingredient contamination .....	43
(g) Preventing contamination from ice used as a coolant.....	46
(h) Preventing contamination from equipment, utensils, and linens .....	46
(i) Preventing contamination from the premises .....	49
(j) Preventing contamination by consumers .....	50
(k) Cooking.....	52
(l) Freezing.....	55
(m) Reheating .....	56
(n) Treating juice .....	57
(o) Time and temperature control.....	57
(p) Specialized processing methods .....	63
(q) Food identity, accurate representation .....	66
(r) Labeling .....	66
(s) Consumer advisory .....	68

(t)	Disposition, contaminated food .....	68
(u)	Additional safeguards, requirements for food establishments serving highly susceptible populations .....	69
(v)	Donation of foods .....	71
§229.165	Equipment, Utensils, and Linens .....	73
(a)	Multiuse materials.....	73
(b)	Single-service and single-use, characteristics.....	75
(c)	Durability and strength .....	75
(d)	Cleanability.....	76
(e)	Accuracy of temperature measuring devices, food.....	77
(f)	Functionality of equipment.....	78
(g)	Equipment, numbers and capacities.....	84
(h)	Utensils, temperature measuring devices, and testing devices .....	86
(i)	Location of equipment, clothes washers and dryers, and storage cabinets.....	86
(j)	Installation, fixed equipment .....	87
(k)	Equipment, maintenance and operation.....	88
(l)	Utensils and temperature and pressure measuring devices.....	92
(m)	Cleaning of equipment and utensils.....	93
(n)	Frequency of cleaning.....	93
(o)	Methods of cleaning.....	96
(p)	Sanitization, food-contact surfaces and utensils .....	99
(q)	Sanitization frequency, before use after cleaning.....	99
(r)	Sanitization methods, hot water and chemical.....	100
(s)	Laundering, clean linens .....	100
(t)	Laundering, frequency .....	100
(u)	Laundering, methods.....	101
(v)	Drying, equipment and utensils .....	101
(w)	Lubricating and reassembling of food-contact surfaces, equipment .....	102
(x)	Storage .....	102
(y)	Handling of utensils, single-service articles .....	103
§229.166	Water, Plumbing, and Waste .....	105
(a)	Water source .....	105
(b)	Water quality standards.....	105
(c)	Water quantity and availability.....	106
(d)	Water distribution, delivery, and retention systems.....	106
(e)	Plumbing systems, approved materials.....	107
(f)	Plumbing design, construction, and installation .....	107
(g)	Plumbing, numbers and capacities.....	108
(h)	Plumbing, location and placement.....	109
(i)	Plumbing, operation and maintenance.....	109
(j)	Sewage retention, drainage, and delivery .....	113
(k)	Disposal facility .....	113
(l)	Storage facilities on the premises .....	114
(m)	Refuse removal .....	117

(n)	Facilities for disposal and recycling, community or individual facility .....	117
§229.167	Physical Facilities .....	118
(a)	Indoor areas, surface characteristics .....	118
(b)	Outdoor areas, surface characteristics.....	118
(c)	Floors, walls, and ceilings.....	118
(d)	Functionality .....	120
(e)	Handwashing facilities.....	122
(f)	Toilets and urinals.....	123
(g)	Lighting, intensity.....	123
(h)	Ventilation, mechanical .....	124
(i)	Dressing areas and lockers, designation .....	124
(j)	Service sinks, availability .....	124
(k)	Handwashing facilities, conveniently located.....	124
(l)	Toilet rooms, convenience and accessibility .....	124
(m)	Employee accommodations, designated areas.....	124
(n)	Distressed merchandise, segregation and location.....	124
(o)	Receptacles, waste handling units, and designated storage areas.....	125
(p)	Premises, buildings, systems, rooms, fixtures, equipment, devices, and materials ...	125
§229.168	Poisonous or Toxic Materials .....	129
(a)	Original containers, identifying information, prominence .....	129
(b)	Working containers, common name .....	129
(c)	Storage, separation.....	129
(d)	Presence and use .....	129
(e)	Container prohibitions, poisonous or toxic material containers .....	130
(f)	Chemicals.....	130
(g)	Lubricants, incidental food contact, criteria .....	131
(h)	Pesticides.....	131
(i)	Medicines.....	132
(j)	First aid supplies, storage.....	132
(k)	Other personal care items, storage .....	132
(l)	Storage and display, separation.....	132
§229.169	Mobile Food Establishments.....	133
(a)	Mobile food establishment provisions .....	133
(b)	Central preparation facility .....	135
(c)	Servicing area and operations .....	135
§229.170	Temporary Food Establishments .....	136
(a)	General.....	136
(b)	Food temperatures.....	136
(c)	Ice.....	136
(d)	Equipment.....	136
(e)	Single-service articles .....	136

(f)	Water.....	136
(g)	Wet storage .....	137
(h)	Sewage .....	137
(i)	Handwashing.....	137
(j)	Floors .....	137
(k)	Ceilings and outer openings of food preparation areas.....	137
§229.171	Compliance and Enforcement.....	138
(a)	Use for intended purpose, public health protection .....	138
(b)	Additional requirements, preventing health hazards, provision for conditions not addressed.....	138
(c)	Variances.....	138
(d)	HACCP plan requirements .....	139
(e)	Confidentiality, trade secrets .....	141
(f)	Permit requirement, prerequisite for operation.....	141
(g)	Conditions of retention, responsibilities of the permit holder .....	141
(h)	Inspection frequency, performance-based and risk-based.....	142
(i)	Competency and access .....	143
(j)	Report of findings .....	144
(k)	Imminent health hazards.....	149
(l)	Critical violations, time frame for corrections.....	149
(m)	Other violations, time frame for corrections.....	150
(n)	Examination and detention of food.....	150
(o)	Investigation and control.....	151
(p)	Reporting of communicable diseases.....	152
§229.173	Heimlich Maneuver Poster .....	154
(a)	Purpose.....	154
(b)	Placement.....	154
(c)	Specifications.....	154
§229.174	Bed and Breakfast Extended Establishments.....	155
(a)	General.....	155
(b)	Food supplies .....	155
(c)	Food preparation and protection .....	155
(d)	Cleaning and sanitizing.....	155
(e)	Personal hygiene .....	155
(f)	Employee restrooms.....	155
(g)	Equipment and utensil design and construction.....	155
(h)	Handsinks.....	155
(i)	Food-contact surfaces .....	156
(j)	Insect proof/rodent proof .....	156
(k)	Equipment.....	156
(l)	Garbage receptacles .....	156
(m)	Sewage .....	156
(n)	Water supply .....	156

§229.175 Outfitter Operations .....	157
(a) General.....	157
(b) Food supplies .....	157
(c) Food temperatures.....	157
(d) Warewashing.....	157
(e) Ice usage.....	157
(f) Potable water.....	157
(g) Handwashing.....	157
(h) Equipment.....	157

(SEE ANNEX FOR NUMERICALLY SEQUENTIAL INDEX BY PARAGRAPH)

TEXAS ADMINISTRATIVE CODE FORMAT

229.161 - Section

- (a) Subsection
  - (1) Paragraph
    - (A) Subparagraph
      - (i) Clause
        - (I) Subclause
          - a- Item
            - 1- Subitem



## TEXAS ADMINSTRATIVE CODE

TITLE 25                   HEALTH SERVICES  
PART 1                    DEPARTMENT OF STATE HEALTH SERVICES  
CHAPTER 229            FOOD AND DRUG  
SUBCHAPTER K        TEXAS FOOD ESTABLISHMENT  
§§229. 229.161 - 229.171, 229.173 - 229.175

§229.161. Purpose. The purpose of these rules is to safeguard public health and provide to consumers food that is safe, unadulterated, and honestly presented.

§229.162. Definitions. The following definitions apply in the interpretation and application of this Code.

(1) Additive--

(A) Food additive is a substance which affects the characteristics of any food as specified in the Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 431, §431.002(17).

(B) Color additive is any material imparting color to a food as stated in the Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 431, §431.002(6).

(2) Adulterated food--A food shall be deemed to be adulterated as specified in the Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 431, §431.081.

(3) Approved--Acceptable to the regulatory authority based on a determination of conformity with principles, practices, and generally recognized standards that protect public health.

(4)  $a_w$ --Water activity which is a measure of the free moisture in a food, is the quotient of the water vapor pressure of the substance divided by the vapor pressure of pure water at the same temperature, and is indicated by the symbol  $a_w$ .

(5) Bed and Breakfast--

(A) Bed and Breakfast Limited means:

- (i) an establishment with seven or fewer rooms for rent;
- (ii) an establishment that serves breakfast to overnight guests;
- (iii) the establishment is not a retail food establishment; and
- (iv) the owner or manager shall successfully complete a food manager's certification course accredited by the department.

**§229.162(5)**

**§229.162(12)**

(B) Bed and Breakfast Extended means:

- (i) an establishment with more than seven rooms for rent; or
- (ii) an establishment that provides food service other than breakfast to overnight guests; and
- (iii) the establishment must meet the specific requirements as outlined in §229.174 of this title (relating to Bed and Breakfast Extended Establishments).

(C) Bed and Breakfast Food Establishment means:

- (i) an establishment that provides food service other than to its overnight guests; and
- (ii) the establishment must meet the rules and regulations applicable to retail food establishments.

(6) Beverage--A liquid for drinking, including water.

(7) Bottled drinking water--Water that is sealed in bottles, packages, or other containers and offered for sale for human consumption, including bottled mineral water.

(8) Casing--A tubular container for sausage products made of either natural or artificial (synthetic) material.

(9) Certification number--A unique combination of letters and numbers assigned by a shellfish control authority to a molluscan shellfish dealer according to the provisions of the National Shellfish Sanitation Program.

(10) Child care center--Any facility licensed by the regulatory authority to receive 13 or more children for child care, which prepares food for on-site consumption.

(11) CIP--Cleaned in place by the circulation or flowing by mechanical means through a piping system of a detergent solution, water rinse, and sanitizing solution onto or over equipment surfaces that require cleaning, such as the method used, in part, to clean and sanitize a frozen dessert machine except that CIP does not include the cleaning of equipment such as band saws, slicers, or mixers that are subjected to in-place manual cleaning without the use of a CIP system.

(12) Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)--Citations in these rules to the CFR refer sequentially to the Title, Part, and Section numbers, such as 21 CFR §178.1010 refers to Title 21, Part 178, §1010. The compilation of the general and permanent rules published in the *Federal Register* by the executive departments and agencies of the federal government which:

**§229.162(12)**

**229.162(21)**

(A) is published annually by the U.S. Government Printing Office; and

(B) contains FDA rules in 21 CFR, USDA rules in 7 CFR and 9 CFR, EPA rules in 40 CFR, and Wildlife and Fisheries rules in 50 CFR.

(13) Commingle--

(A) To combine shellstock harvested on different days or from different growing areas as identified on the tag or label, or

(B) To combine shucked shellfish from containers with different container codes or different shucking dates.

(14) Comminuted--Reduced in size by methods including chopping, flaking, grinding, or mincing. The term includes fish or meat products that are reduced in size and restructured or reformulated such as gefilte fish, gyros, ground beef, and sausage; and a mixture of two or more types of meat that have been reduced in size and combined, such as sausages made from two or more meats.

(15) Common dining area--A central location in a group residence where people gather to eat at mealtime. The term does not apply to a kitchenette or dining area located within a resident's private living quarters.

(16) Confirmed disease outbreak--A foodborne disease outbreak in which laboratory analysis of appropriate specimens identifies a causative agent and epidemiological analysis implicates the food as the source of the illness.

(17) Consumer--A person who is a member of the public, takes possession of food, is not functioning in the capacity of an operator of a food establishment or food processing plant, and does not offer the food for resale.

(18) Corrosion-resistant material--A material that maintains acceptable surface cleanability characteristics under prolonged influence of the food to be contacted, the normal use of cleaning compounds and sanitizing solutions, and other conditions of the use environment.

(19) Critical control point--A point or procedure in a specific food system where loss of control may result in an unacceptable health risk.

(20) Critical item--A provision of these rules, that, if in noncompliance, is more likely than other violations to contribute to food contamination, illness, or environmental health hazard.

(21) Critical limit--The maximum or minimum value to which a physical, biological, or chemical parameter must be controlled at a critical control point to minimize the risk that the identified food safety hazard may occur.

**§229.162(21)**

**229.162(26)**

(22) Department--The Department of State Health Services.

(23) Disclosure--A written statement that clearly identifies the animal-derived foods which are, or can be ordered, raw, undercooked, or without otherwise being processed to eliminate pathogens in their entirety, or items that contain an ingredient that is raw, undercooked, or without otherwise being processed to eliminate pathogens.

(24) Drinking water--

(A) "Drinking water" means water that meets 30 TAC, §§290.101-290.114, 290.117-290.119, 290.121 (relating to Drinking Water Standards Governing Drinking Water Quality and Reporting Requirements for Public Water Supply Systems).

(B) Drinking water is traditionally known as "potable water."

(C) Drinking water includes the term "water" except where the term used connotes that the water is not potable, such as "boiler water," "mop water," "rainwater," "wastewater," and "nondrinking" water.

(25) Dry storage area means a room or area designated for the storage of packaged or containerized bulk food that is not potentially hazardous and dry goods such as single-service items.

(26) Easily cleanable--

(A) Easily cleanable means a characteristic of a surface that:

(i) allows effective removal of soil by normal cleaning methods;

(ii) is dependent on the material, design, construction, and installation of the surface; and

(iii) varies with the likelihood of the surface's role in introducing pathogenic or toxigenic agents or other contaminants into food based on the surface's approved placement, purpose, and use.

(B) Easily cleanable includes a tiered application of the criteria that qualify the surface as easily cleanable as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph to different situations in which varying degrees of cleanability are required such as:

(i) the appropriateness of stainless steel for a food preparation surface as opposed to the lack of need for stainless steel to be used for floors or for tables used for consumer dining; or

(ii) the need for a different degree of cleanability for a utilitarian attachment or accessory in the kitchen as opposed to a decorative attachment or accessory in the consumer dining area.

(27) Easily movable--

(A) Portable; mounted on casters, gliders, or rollers; or provided with a mechanical means to safely tilt a unit of equipment for cleaning; and

(B) Having no utility connection, a utility connection that disconnects quickly, or a flexible utility connection line of sufficient length to allow the equipment to be moved for cleaning of the equipment and adjacent area.

(28) Egg--The shell egg of the domesticated chicken, turkey, duck, goose, or guinea.

(29) Employee--The permit holder, person in charge, person having supervisory or management duties, person on the payroll, family member, volunteer, person performing work under contractual agreement, or other person working in a food establishment.

(30) EPA--The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

(31) Equipment--

(A) Equipment means an article that is used in the operation of a food establishment such as a freezer, grinder, hood, ice maker, meat block, mixer, oven, reach-in refrigerator, scale, sink, slicer, stove, table, temperature measuring device for ambient air, vending machine, or warewashing machine.

(B) Equipment does not include items used for handling or storing large quantities of packaged foods that are received from a supplier in a cased or overwrapped lot, such as hand trucks, forklifts, dollies, pallets, racks, and skids.

(32) Exclude--To prevent a person from working as a food employee or entering a food establishment except for those areas open to the general public.

(33) Exotic animal--Member of a species of game not indigenous to this state including axis deer, nilga antelope, red sheep, or other cloven-hoofed ruminant animals. Exotic animals are considered livestock as defined in these rules and are amenable to inspection under Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 433, §433.035 (Inspection and Other Regulation of Exotic Animals in Interstate Commerce).

(34) FDA--The U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

**§229.162(34)**

**229.162(40)**

(35) Fish--

(A) Fish means fresh or saltwater finfish, crustaceans and other forms of aquatic life (including alligator, frog, aquatic turtle, jellyfish, sea cucumber, and sea urchin and the roe of such animals) other than birds or mammals, and all mollusks, if such animal life is intended for human consumption.

(B) Fish includes an edible human food product derived in whole or in part from fish, including fish that have been processed in any manner.

(36) Food--A raw, cooked, or processed edible substance, ice, beverage, or ingredient used or intended for use or for sale in whole or in part for human consumption, or chewing gum.

(37) Foodborne disease outbreak--The occurrence of two or more cases of a similar illness resulting from the ingestion of a common food.

(38) Food-contact surface--

(A) A surface of equipment or a utensil with which food normally comes into contact; or

(B) A surface of equipment or a utensil from which food may drain, drip, or splash:

(i) into a food; or

(ii) onto a surface normally in contact with food.

(39) Food employee--An individual working with unpackaged food, food equipment or utensils, or food-contact surfaces.

(40) Food establishment--

(A) Food establishment means an operation that stores, prepares, packages, serves, vends, or otherwise provides food for human consumption:

(i) such as a restaurant; retail food store; satellite or catered feeding location; catering operation if the operation provides food directly to a consumer or to a conveyance used to transport people; market; vending location; conveyance used to transport people; institution; or food bank; and

(ii) that relinquishes possession of food to a consumer directly, or indirectly through a delivery service such as home delivery of grocery orders or restaurant takeout orders, or delivery service that is provided by common carriers.

**§229.162(40)**

**229.162(42)**

(B) Food establishment includes:

(i) an element of the operation such as a transportation vehicle or a central preparation facility that supplies a vending location or satellite feeding location unless the vending or feeding location is permitted by the regulatory authority; and

(ii) an operation that is conducted in a mobile, stationary, temporary, or permanent facility or location; where consumption is on or off the premises; and regardless of whether there is a charge for the food.

(C) Food establishment does not include:

(i) an establishment that offers only prepackaged foods that are not potentially hazardous;

(ii) a produce stand that only offers whole, uncut fresh fruits and vegetables;

(iii) a food processing plant;

(iv) a kitchen in a private home if only food that is not potentially hazardous is prepared for sale or service at a function such as a religious or charitable organization's bake sale if allowed by law;

(v) an area where food that is prepared as specified in subparagraph (C)(iv) of this paragraph is sold or offered for human consumption;

(vi) a Bed and Breakfast Limited facility as defined in these rules; or

(vii) a private home that receives catered or home-delivered food.

(41) Food processing plant--

(A) Food processing plant means a commercial operation that manufactures, packages, labels, or stores food for human consumption and does not provide food directly to a consumer.

(B) Food processing plant does not include a food establishment as defined under paragraph (40) of this section.

(42) Game animal--

(A) Game animal means an animal, the products of which are food, that is not classified as cattle, sheep, swine, goat, horse, mule, or other equine in 9 CFR 301, Definitions; as

**§229.162(42)**

**229.162(50)**

poultry in 9 CFR 381, Poultry Products Inspection Regulations; or as fish as defined under paragraph (35) of this section.

(B) “Game animal” includes mammals such as reindeer, elk, deer, antelope, water buffalo, bison, rabbit, squirrel, opossum, raccoon, nutria, or muskrat, and nonaquatic reptiles such as land snakes.

(C) “Game animal” does not include ratites such as ostrich, emu, and rhea.

(43) General use pesticide--A pesticide that is not classified by EPA for restricted use as specified in 40 CFR §152.175.

(44) Grade A standards--The requirements of the United States Public Health Service/FDA “Grade A Pasteurized Milk Ordinance” with which certain fluid and dry milk and milk products comply.

(45) Group residence--A private or public housing corporation or institutional facility that provides living quarters and meals. The term includes a domicile for unrelated persons such as a retirement home, correctional facility, or a long-term care facility.

(46) Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point (HACCP)--A systematic approach to the hazard identification, evaluation, and control of food safety hazards.

(47) HACCP plan--A written document that delineates the formal procedures for following the Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point principles developed by The National Advisory Committee on Microbiological Criteria for Foods.

(48) Hazard--A biological, chemical, or physical property that may cause an unacceptable consumer health risk.

(49) Hermetically sealed container--A container that is designed and intended to be secure against the entry of microorganisms and, in the case of low acid canned foods, to maintain the commercial sterility of its contents after processing.

(50) Highly susceptible population--Persons who are more likely than other people in the general population to experience foodborne disease because they are:

(A) immunocompromised; preschool age children, or older adults; and

(B) obtaining food at a facility that provides services such as custodial care, health care, or assisted living, such as a child or adult day care center, kidney dialysis center, hospital or nursing home, or nutritional or socialization services such as a senior center.



**§229.162(51)**

**229.162(60)**

(51) Imminent health hazard--A significant threat or danger to health that is considered to exist when there is evidence sufficient to show that a product, practice, circumstance, or event creates a situation that requires immediate correction or cessation of operation to prevent injury based on:

(A) the number of potential injuries; and

(B) the nature, severity, and duration of the anticipated injury.

(52) Injected--Manipulating a meat so that infectious or toxigenic microorganisms may be introduced from its surface to its interior through tenderizing with deep penetration or injecting the meat such as by processes which may be referred to as “injecting,” “pinning,” or “stitch pumping.”

(53) Juice--When used in the context of food safety, the aqueous liquid expressed or extracted from one or more fruits or vegetables, purées of the edible portions of one or more fruits or vegetables, or any concentrates of such liquid or purée. Juice includes juice as a whole beverage, an ingredient of a beverage and a purée as an ingredient of a beverage.

(54) Kitchenware--Food preparation and storage utensils.

(55) Law--Applicable local, state, and federal statutes, regulations, and ordinances.

(56) Linens--Fabric items such as cloth hampers, cloth napkins, tablecloths, wiping cloths, and work garments including cloth gloves.

(57) Livestock--Cattle, sheep, swine, goats, horses, mules, other equine, poultry, domesticated rabbits, exotic animals, and domesticated birds. Livestock are amenable to inspection.

(58) Meat--The flesh of animals used as food including the dressed flesh of cattle, swine, sheep, or goats and other edible animals, except fish, poultry, exotic animals as specified in §229.164(b)(7)(A)(ii) and (iii), and wild game animals as specified in §229.164(b)(7)(B)(iii) and (iv) of this title (relating to Food) that is offered for human consumption.

(59) mg/L--Milligrams per liter, which is the metric equivalent of parts per million (ppm).

(60) Mobile food establishment--A vehicle mounted food establishment that is readily moveable.

(61) Molluscan shellfish--Any edible species of fresh or frozen oysters, clams, mussels, and scallops or edible portions thereof, except when the scallop product consists only of the shucked adductor muscle.

**§229.162(61)**

**229.162(69)**

(62) Outfitter operation--Any operation such as trail rides or river raft trips where food is offered to patrons and which operates out of a central preparation location or food establishment.

(63) Packaged--

(A) Packaged means bottled, canned, cartoned, securely bagged, or securely wrapped, whether packaged in a food establishment or a food processing plant.

(B) Packaged does not include a wrapper, carry-out box, or other nondurable container used to containerize food with the purpose of facilitating food protection during service and receipt of the food by the consumer.

(64) Permit--The document issued by the regulatory authority that authorizes a person to operate a food establishment.

(65) Permit holder--The entity that:

(A) is legally responsible for the operation of the food establishment such as the owner, the owner's agent, or other person; and

(B) possesses a valid permit to operate a food establishment.

(66) Person--An association, a corporation, individual, partnership, other legal entity, government, or governmental subdivision or agency.

(67) Person in charge--The individual present at a food establishment who is responsible for the operation at the time of inspection.

(68) Personal care items--

(A) Personal care items means items or substances that may be poisonous, toxic, or a source of contamination and are used to maintain or enhance a person's health, hygiene, or appearance.

(B) Personal care items include items such as medicines; first aid supplies; and other items such as cosmetics, and toiletries such as toothpaste and mouthwash.

(69) pH--The symbol for the negative logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration, which is a measure of the degree of acidity or alkalinity of a solution. Values between 0 and 7 indicate acidity and values between 7 and 14 indicate alkalinity. The value for pure distilled water is 7, which is considered neutral.

**§229.162(69)**

**229.162(74)**

(70) Physical facilities--The structure and interior surfaces of a food establishment including accessories such as soap and towel dispensers and attachments such as light fixtures and heating or air conditioning system vents.

(71) Plumbing fixture--A receptacle or device that:

(A) is permanently or temporarily connected to the water distribution system of the premises and demands a supply of water from the system; or

(B) discharges used water, waste materials, or sewage directly or indirectly to the drainage system of the premises.

(72) Plumbing system--The water supply and distribution pipes; plumbing fixtures and traps; soil, waste, and vent pipes; sanitary and storm sewers and building drains, including their respective connections, devices, and appurtenances within the premises; and water-treating equipment.

(73) Poisonous or toxic materials--Substances that are not intended for ingestion and are included in four categories:

(A) cleaners and sanitizers, which include cleaning and sanitizing agents and agents such as caustics, acids, drying agents, polishes, and other chemicals;

(B) pesticides, except sanitizers, which include substances such as insecticides and rodenticides;

(C) substances necessary for the operation and maintenance of the establishment such as nonfood grade lubricants and personal care items that may be deleterious to health; and

(D) substances that are not necessary for the operation and maintenance of the establishment and are on the premises for retail sale, such as petroleum products and paints.

(74) Potentially hazardous food--

(A) Potentially hazardous food (PHF) means a food that requires time and temperature control for safety (TCS) to limit pathogen growth or toxin production.

(B) Potentially hazardous food includes:

(i) an animal food (a food of animal origin), including fresh shell eggs, that is raw or heat-treated; a food of plant origin that is heat-treated or consists of raw seed sprouts; cut melons; and garlic-in-oil mixtures that are not modified in a way that results in mixtures that do not support growth as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph; and

(ii) a food whose pH/ $a_w$  interaction is designated as PHF/TCS in one of the tables listed in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, unless a product assessment or vendor documentation acceptable to the regulatory authority is provided.

(C) Potentially hazardous food does not include:

(i) an air-cooled hard-boiled egg with shell intact, or a shell egg that is not hard-boiled, but has been treated to destroy all viable Salmonellae;

(ii) a food whose pH/ $a_w$  interaction is designated as non-PHF/non-TCS in one of the tables in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph;

(iii) a food, in an unopened hermetically sealed container, that is commercially processed to achieve and maintain commercial sterility under conditions of non-refrigerated storage and distribution;

(iv) a food for which a product assessment, including laboratory evidence, demonstrates that time and temperature control for safety is not required and that may contain a preservative, other barrier to the growth of microorganisms, or a combination of barriers that inhibit the growth of microorganisms; or

(v) a food that does not support the growth of microorganisms as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph even though the food may contain an infectious or toxigenic microorganism or chemical or physical contaminant at a level sufficient to cause illness.

(D) Potentially hazardous food does not include food that, because of pH, wateractivity ( $a_w$ ) or the interaction of pH and  $a_w$ , is considered non-PHF/non-TCS in Table A or B below. Guidance for using the tables is provided in the document entitled “Using pH,  $a_w$ , or the Interaction of pH and  $a_w$  to Determine If a Food Requires Time/Temperature Control for Safety (TCS)”. Copies of the guidance document may be downloaded from the following website: <http://www.dshs.state.tx.us>, or may be obtained from the department, 1100 West 49th Street, Austin, Texas 78756-3182.

(i) Table A.

Figure: 25 TAC §229.162(74)(D)(i)

<b>Table A. Control of spores: Product heat-treated to control vegetative cells and subsequently packaged.</b>			
Critical a <sub>w</sub> values	Critical pH values		
	4.6 or less	>4.6 – 5.6	>5.6
0.92 or less	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS
>0.92-0.95	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	PHF/TCS
>0.95	non-PHF/non-TCS	PHF/TCS	PHF/TCS

(ii) Table B.

Figure: 25 TAC §229.162(74)(D)(ii)

<b>Table B. Control of vegetative cells and spores: Product not heat-treated or heat-treated but not packaged.</b>				
Critical a <sub>w</sub> Values	Critical pH values			
	<4.2	4.2 – 4.6	4.6 – 5.0	>5.0
<0.88	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS
0.88-0.90	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	PHF/TCS
>0.90-0.92	non-PHF/non-TCS	non-PHF/non-TCS	PHF/TCS	PHF/TCS
>0.92	non-PHF/non-TCS	PHF/TCS	PHF/TCS	PHF/TCS

(75) Poultry--

(A) Poultry means:

(i) any domesticated bird (chickens, turkeys, ducks, geese, or guineas), whether live or dead, as defined in the Health and Safety Code, Chapter 433, §433.003; and

(ii) any migratory waterfowl, game bird, such as pheasant, partridge, quail, grouse, or guinea, or pigeon or squab, whether live or dead, as defined in the Health and Safety Code, Chapter 433, §433.003.

(B) Poultry does not include ratites.

**§229.162(76)**

**229.162(80)**

(76) Premises--

(A) The physical facility, its contents, and the contiguous land or property under the control of the permit holder; or

(B) The physical facility, its contents, and the land or property not described under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph if its facilities and contents are under the control of the permit holder and may impact food establishment personnel, facilities, or operations, and a food establishment is only one component of a larger operation such as a health care facility, hotel, motel, school, recreational camp, or prison.

(77) Primal cut--A basic major cut into which carcasses and sides of meat are separated, such as a beef round, pork loin, lamb flank, or veal breast.

(78) Public water system has the meaning stated in 30 Texas Administrative Code (TAC), §§290.101 - 290.121 (relating to Drinking Water Standards Governing Drinking Water Quality and Reporting Requirements for Public Water Supply Systems).

(79) Pushcart--A non self-propelled mobile food unit limited to serving nonpotentially hazardous food or potentially hazardous foods requiring a limited amount of preparation as authorized by the regulatory authority. A pushcart is classified as a mobile food establishment. A pushcart does not include non self-propelled units owned and operated within a retail food store.

(80) Ready-to-eat food--

(A) Ready-to-eat food means food that:

(i) is in a form that is edible without additional preparation to achieve food safety, as specified under §§229.164(k)(1)(A)-(C), 229.164(k)(2), or 229.164(l)(1)-(2) of this title;

(ii) is a raw or partially cooked animal food and the consumer is advised as specified under §229.164(k)(1)(D)(i) and (ii) of this title;

(iii) is prepared in accordance with a variance that is granted as specified under §229.164(k)(1)(D)(i) and (iii) of this title; and

(iv) may receive additional preparation for palatability or aesthetic, epicurean, gastronomic, or culinary purposes.

**§229.162(80)**

**229.162(81)**

(B) Ready-to-eat food includes:

(i) raw animal food that is cooked as specified under §§229.164(k)(1) or 229.164(k)(2), or frozen as specified under §229.164(l)(1)-(2) of this title;

(ii) raw fruits and vegetables that are washed as specified under §229.164(f)(6) of this title;

(iii) fruits and vegetables that are cooked for hot holding, as specified under §229.164(k)(3) of this title;

(iv) all potentially hazardous food that is cooked to the temperature and time required for the specific food under §229.164(k) of this title, and cooled as specified in §229.164(o)(4) of this title;

(v) plant food for which further washing, cooking, or other processing is not required for food safety, and from which rinds, peels, husks, or shells, if naturally present are removed;

(vi) substances derived from plants such as spices, seasonings, and sugar;

(vii) a bakery item such as bread, cakes, pies, fillings, or icing for which further cooking is not required for food safety;

(viii) the following products that are produced in accordance with USDA guidelines and that have received a lethality treatment for pathogens: dry, fermented sausages, such as dry salami or pepperoni; salt-cured meat and poultry products, such as prosciutto ham, country cured ham, and Parma ham; and dried meat and poultry products, such as jerky or beef sticks; and

(ix) foods manufactured according to 21 CFR 113, Thermally Processed Low-Acid Foods Packaged in Hermetically Sealed Containers.

(81) Reduced oxygen packaging--

(A) Reduced oxygen packaging means:

(i) the reduction of the amount of oxygen in a package by removing oxygen; displacing oxygen and replacing it with another gas or combination of gases; or otherwise controlling the oxygen content to a level below that normally found in the surrounding, 21% oxygen atmosphere; and

**§229.162(81)**

**229.162(87)**

(ii) a process as specified in subparagraph (A)(i) of this paragraph that involves a food for which *Clostridium botulinum* is identified as a microbiological hazard in the final packaged form.

(B) Reduced oxygen packaging includes:

(i) vacuum packaging, in which air is removed from a package of food and the package is hermetically sealed so that a vacuum remains inside the package, such as sous vide;

(ii) modified atmosphere packaging, in which the atmosphere of a package of food is modified so that its composition is different from air but the atmosphere may change over time due to the permeability of the packaging material or the respiration of the food. Modified atmosphere packaging includes: reduction in the proportion of oxygen, total replacement of oxygen, or an increase in the proportion of other gases such as carbon dioxide or nitrogen; and

(iii) controlled atmosphere packaging, in which the atmosphere of a package of food is modified so that until the package is opened, its composition is different from air, and continuous control of that atmosphere is maintained, such as by using oxygen scavengers or a combination of total replacement of oxygen, nonrespiring food, and impermeable packaging material.

(82) Refuse--Solid waste not carried by water through the sewage system.

(83) Regulatory authority--The local, state, or federal enforcement body or authorized representative having jurisdiction over the food establishment.

(84) Reminder--A written statement concerning the health risk of consuming animal foods raw, undercooked, or without otherwise being processed to eliminate pathogens.

(85) Restrict--To limit the activities of a food employee so that there is no risk of transmitting a disease that is transmissible through food and the food employee does not work with exposed food, clean equipment, utensils, linens; and unwrapped single-service or single-use articles.

(86) Restricted egg--Any check, dirty egg, incubator reject, inedible, leaker, or loss as defined in 9 CFR 590.

(87) Restricted use pesticide--A pesticide product that contains the active ingredients specified in 40 CFR §152.175, Pesticides classified for restricted use, and that is limited to use by or under the direct supervision of a certified applicator.



**§229.162(88)**

**229.162(97)**

(88) Risk--The likelihood that an adverse health effect will occur within a population as a result of a hazard in a food.

(89) Roadside food vendor--A person who operates a mobile retail food store from a temporary location adjacent to a public road or highway. Food shall not be prepared or processed by a roadside food vendor. A roadside food vendor is classified as a mobile food establishment.

(90) Safe material means:

(A) an article manufactured from or composed of materials that may not reasonably be expected to result, directly or indirectly, in their becoming a component or otherwise affecting the characteristics of any food;

(B) an additive that is used as specified in Chapter 431 of the Texas Health and Safety Code; or

(C) other materials that are not additives and that are used in conformity with applicable regulations of the Food and Drug Administration.

(91) Sanitization--The application of cumulative heat or chemicals on cleaned food-contact surfaces that, when evaluated for efficacy, is sufficient to yield a reduction of 5 logs, which is equal to a 99.999% reduction, of representative disease microorganisms of public health importance.

(92) Sealed--Free of cracks or other openings that allow the entry or passage of moisture.

(93) Service animal--An animal such as a guide dog, signal dog, or other animal individually trained to provide assistance to an individual with a disability.

(94) Servicing area--An operating base location to which a mobile food establishment or transportation vehicle returns regularly for such things as vehicle and equipment cleaning, discharging liquid or solid wastes, refilling water tanks and ice bins, and boarding food.

(95) Sewage--Liquid waste containing animal or vegetable matter in suspension or solution and may include liquids containing chemicals in solution.

(96) Shellfish control authority--A state, federal, foreign, tribal, or other government entity legally responsible for administering a program that includes certification of molluscan shellfish harvesters and dealers for interstate commerce.

(97) Shellstock--Raw, in-shell molluscan shellfish.

**§229.162(98)**

**229.162(105)**

(98) Shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli--Any E. coli capable of producing Shiga toxins (also called verocytotoxins or “Shiga-like” toxins). This includes, but is not limited to, E. coli reported as serotype O157:H7, O157: NM, and O157:H-

(99) Shucked shellfish--Molluscan shellfish that have one or both shells removed.

(100) Single-service articles--Tableware, carry-out utensils, and other items such as bags, containers, placemats, stirrers, straws, toothpicks, and wrappers that are designed and constructed for one time, one person use after which they are intended for discard.

(101) Single-use articles--

(A) Single-use articles means utensils and bulk food containers designed and constructed to be used once and discarded.

(B) Single-use articles include items such as wax paper, butcher paper, plastic wrap, formed aluminum food containers, jars, plastic tubs or buckets, bread wrappers, pickle barrels, ketchup bottles, and number 10 cans which do not meet the materials, durability, strength, and cleanability specifications under §§229.165(a), (c), and (d) of this title (relating to Equipment, Utensils, and Linens) for multiuse utensils.

(102) Slacking--The process of moderating the temperature of a food such as allowing a food to gradually increase from a temperature of -23 degrees Celsius (-10 degrees Fahrenheit) to -4 degrees Celsius (25 degrees Fahrenheit) in preparation for deep-fat frying or to facilitate even heat penetration during the cooking of previously block-frozen food such as spinach.

(103) Smooth--

(A) A food-contact surface having a surface free of pits and inclusions with a cleanability equal to or exceeding that of (100 grit) number 3 stainless steel;

(B) A nonfood-contact surface of equipment having a surface equal to that of commercial grade hot-rolled steel free of visible scale; and

(C) A floor, wall, or ceiling having an even or level surface with no roughness or projections that render it difficult to clean.

(104) Table-mounted equipment--Equipment that is not portable and is designed to be mounted off the floor on a table, counter, or shelf.

(105) Tableware--Eating, drinking, and serving utensils for table use such as flatware including forks, knives, and spoons; hollowware including bowls, cups, serving dishes, and tumblers; and plates.

**§229.162(106)**

(106) TCS--Time and temperature control for safety.

(107) Temperature measuring device--A thermometer, thermocouple, thermistor, or other device that indicates the temperature of food, air, or water.

(108) Temporary food establishment--A food establishment that operates for a period of no more than 14 consecutive days in conjunction with a single event or celebration.

(109) USDA--The U.S. Department of Agriculture.

(110) Utensil--A food-contact implement or container used in the storage, preparation, transportation, dispensing, sale, or service of food, such as kitchenware or tableware that is multiuse, single-service, or single-use; gloves used in contact with food; temperature sensing probes of food temperature measuring devices; and probe-type price or identification tags used in contact with food.

(111) Variance--A written document issued by the regulatory authority that authorizes a modification or waiver of one or more requirements of this title if, in the opinion of the regulatory authority, a health hazard or nuisance will not result from the modification or waiver.

(112) Vending machine--A self-service device that, upon insertion of a coin, paper currency, token, card, or key, or by optional manual operation, dispenses unit servings of food in bulk or in packages without the necessity of replenishing the device between each vending operation.

(113) Vending machine location--The room, enclosure, space, or area where one or more vending machines are installed and operated and includes the storage areas and areas on the premises that are used to service and maintain the vending machines.

(114) Warewashing--The cleaning and sanitizing of utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment.

(115) Whole-muscle, intact beef--Whole muscle beef that is not injected, mechanically tenderized, reconstructed, or scored and marinated, from which beef steaks may be cut.

**§229.163(a)**

**§229.163(b)**

**Item No.** §229.163. Management and Personnel.

(a) Responsibility, assignment. The permit holder shall be the person in charge or shall designate a person in charge and shall ensure that a person in charge is present at the food establishment during all hours of operation.

**#22** (b) Knowledge, demonstration. Based on the risks of foodborne illness inherent to the food operation, during inspections and upon request the person in charge shall demonstrate to the regulatory authority knowledge of foodborne disease prevention, application of the Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point principles, and the requirements of these rules. The person in charge shall demonstrate this knowledge by:

(1) complying with these rules by having no critical violations during the current inspection;

(2) being a certified food protection manager who has shown proficiency of required information through passing a department approved examination; or

(3) responding correctly to the inspector's questions as they relate to the specific food operation. The areas of knowledge include:

(A) describing the relationship between the prevention of foodborne disease and the personal hygiene of a food employee;

(B) explaining the responsibility of the person in charge for preventing the transmission of foodborne disease by a food employee who has a disease or medical condition that may cause foodborne disease;

(C) describing the symptoms associated with the diseases that are transmissible through food;

(D) explaining the significance of the relationship between maintaining the time and temperature of potentially hazardous food and the prevention of foodborne illness;

(E) explaining the hazards involved in the consumption of raw or undercooked meat, poultry, eggs, and fish;

(F) stating the required food temperatures and times for safe cooking of potentially hazardous food including meat, poultry, eggs, and fish;

(G) stating the required temperatures and times for the safe refrigerated storage, hot holding, cooling, and reheating of potentially hazardous food;

(H) describing the relationship between the prevention of foodborne illness and the management and control of the following:

(i) cross contamination;

(ii) hand contact with ready-to-eat foods;

(iii) handwashing; and

(iv) maintaining the food establishment in a clean condition and in good repair;

(I) explaining the relationship between food safety and providing equipment that is:

(i) sufficient in number and capacity; and

(ii) properly designed, constructed, located, installed, operated, maintained, and cleaned;

(J) explaining correct procedures for cleaning and sanitizing utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment;

(K) identifying the source of water used and measures taken to ensure that it remains protected from contamination such as providing protection from backflow and precluding the creation of cross connections;

(L) identifying poisonous and toxic materials in the food establishment and the procedures necessary to ensure that they are safely stored, dispensed, used, and disposed of according to law;

(M) identifying critical control points in the operation from purchasing through sale or service that when not controlled may contribute to the transmission of foodborne illness and explaining steps taken to ensure that the points are controlled in accordance with the requirements of these rules;

(N) explaining the details of how the person in charge and food employees comply with the HACCP plan if a plan is required by the law, these rules, or an agreement between the regulatory authority and the establishment; and

(O) explaining the responsibilities, rights, and authorities assigned by these rules to the:

(i) food employee;

#22

(ii) person in charge; and

(iii) regulatory authority.

(c) Duties, person in charge. The person in charge shall ensure that:

(1) food establishment operations are not conducted in a private home or in a room used as living or sleeping quarters as specified under §229.167(d)(10) of this title (relating to Physical Facilities);

(2) persons unnecessary to the food establishment operation are not allowed in the food preparation, food storage, or warewashing areas, except that brief visits and tours may be authorized by the person in charge if steps are taken to ensure that exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles are protected from contamination;

(3) employees and other persons such as delivery and maintenance persons and pesticide applicators entering the food preparation, food storage, and warewashing areas comply with these rules;

(4) employees are effectively cleaning their hands, by routinely monitoring the employees' handwashing;

(5) employees are visibly observing foods as they are received to determine that they are from approved sources, delivered at the required temperatures, protected from contamination, unadulterated, and accurately presented, by routinely monitoring the employees' observations and periodically evaluating foods upon their receipt;

(6) employees are properly cooking potentially hazardous food, being particularly careful in cooking those foods known to cause severe foodborne illness and death, such as eggs and comminuted meats, through daily oversight of the employees' routine monitoring of the cooking temperatures using appropriate temperature measuring devices properly scaled and calibrated as specified under §§229.165(e) and (l)(1)(B) of this title (relating to Equipment, Utensils, and Linens);

(7) employees are using proper methods to rapidly cool potentially hazardous foods that are not held hot or are not for consumption within four hours, through daily oversight of the employees' routine monitoring of food temperatures during cooling;

(8) consumers who order raw or partially cooked ready-to-eat foods of animal origin are informed as specified under §229.164(s) of this title (relating to Food) that the food is not cooked sufficiently to ensure its safety;

**§229.163(c)**

**§229.163(d)**

(9) employees are properly sanitizing cleaned multiuse equipment and utensils before they are reused, through routine monitoring of solution temperature and exposure time for hot water sanitizing, and chemical concentration, pH, temperature, and exposure time for chemical sanitizing;

(10) consumers are notified that clean tableware is to be used when they return to self-service areas such as salad bars and buffets as specified under §229.164 (h)(6) of this title;

(11) except when otherwise approved as specified in §229.164(e)(1)(D) of this title, employees are preventing cross-contamination of ready-to-eat food with bare hands by properly using suitable utensils such as deli tissue, spatulas, tongs, single-use gloves, or dispensing equipment; and

(12) employees are properly trained in food safety as it relates to their assigned duties.

(d) Disease or medical condition.

(1) Responsibility of the person in charge to require reporting by food employees and applicants. The permit holder shall require food employee applicants to whom a conditional offer of employment is made and food employees to report to the person in charge, information about their health and activities as they relate to diseases that are transmissible through food. A food employee or applicant shall report the information in a manner that allows the person in charge to reduce the risk of foodborne disease transmission, including the date of onset of jaundice or of an illness specified under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, if the food employee or applicant:

(A) is diagnosed with an illness due to:

- (i) Norovirus;
- (ii) hepatitis A virus;
- (iii) Salmonella typhi;
- (iv) Shigella spp.; or
- (v) shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli;

(B) has a symptom caused by illness, infection, or other source that is:

- (i) associated with an acute gastrointestinal illness such as:
  - (I) vomiting;

(II) diarrhea;

(III) jaundice; or

(IV) sore throat with fever.

(ii) a lesion containing pus such as a boil or infected wound that is open or draining and is:

(I) on the hands or wrists, unless an impermeable cover such as a finger cot or stall protects the lesion and a single-use glove is worn over the impermeable cover;

(II) on exposed portions of the arms, unless the lesion is protected by an impermeable cover; or

(III) on other parts of the body, unless the lesion is covered by a dry, durable, tight-fitting bandage;

(C) has experienced jaundice, or a past illness from:

(i) *S. typhi* within the past three months;

(ii) *Shigella* spp. or shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* within the past month; or

(iii) onset of jaundice within the past seven days; or

(D) meets one or more of the following conditions:

(i) is suspected of causing, or being exposed to, a confirmed disease outbreak caused by Norovirus, *S. typhi*, *Shigella* spp., shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*, or hepatitis A virus including an outbreak at an event such as a family meal, church supper, or festival because the food employee or applicant:

(I) prepared food implicated in the outbreak; or

(II) consumed implicated food or food at the event prepared by a person who is infected or ill with the infectious agent that caused the outbreak or who is suspected of being a shedder of the infectious agent;



**§229.163(d)**

**§229.163(d)**

(ii) lives in the same household as, and has knowledge about, a person who is diagnosed with a disease caused by Norovirus, *S. typhi*, *Shigella* spp, shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*, or hepatitis A virus; or

(iii) lives in the same household as, and has knowledge about, a person who attends or works in a setting where there is a confirmed disease outbreak caused by Norovirus, *S. typhi*, *Shigella* spp., shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*, or hepatitis A virus.

(2) Exclusions and restrictions. The person in charge shall:

#6

(A) exclude a food employee from a food establishment if the food employee is exhibiting sudden onset vomiting and/or diarrhea that cannot be attributed to a non-infectious condition;

(B) exclude a food employee from a food establishment if the food employee is diagnosed with an infectious agent specified under paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection;

(C) exclude jaundiced food employees from the food establishment if the onset of jaundice occurred within the last seven calendar days;

(D) exclude a food employee who is serving a highly susceptible population, if the food employee:

(i) is not experiencing a symptom of acute gastrointestinal illness specified under paragraph (1)(B)(i) of this subsection but has a stool that is positive for Norovirus, *S. typhi*, *Shigella* spp., or shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*;

(ii) had a past illness from *S. typhi* within the last three months, unless the employee provides laboratory confirmation of three consecutive, negative stools as specified in §229.171(o)(4)(A) of this title (relating to Compliance and Enforcement), and is asymptomatic; or

(iii) had a past illness from *Shigella* spp. or shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* within the last month, unless the employee provides laboratory confirmation of two consecutive, negative stools as specified in §229.171(o)(4)(C) of this title, and is asymptomatic; and

(E) except as specified under subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, restrict a food employee from working with exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles, in a food establishment if the food employee is:

(i) suffering from a symptom of a sore throat with fever as specified under paragraph (1)(B)(i)(IV) of this subsection; or

#6

(ii) not experiencing a symptom of acute gastroenteritis specified under paragraph (1)(B)(i) of this subsection but has a stool that yields a specimen culture that is positive for Norovirus, Salmonella typhi, Shigella spp., or shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli; or

(iii) has a lesion containing pus such as a boil or infected wound that is open or draining as specified under paragraph (1)(B)(ii) of this subsection, and is not covered with an impermeable cover.

(3) Removal of exclusions and restrictions.

(A) The person in charge may remove an exclusion specified under paragraph (2)(A) of this subsection if:

(i) the employee is free of vomiting and/or diarrhea symptoms for at least 24 hours; or

(ii) the person excluded as specified under paragraph (2)(A) of this subsection provides to the person in charge written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant, that specifies the vomiting and/or diarrhea result from a chronic noninfectious condition such as Crohn's disease, irritable bowel syndrome, or ulcerative colitis; or other acute noninfectious condition.

(B) The person in charge may remove an exclusion specified under paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection if:

(i) the person in charge obtains approval from the regulatory authority; and

(ii) the person excluded as specified under paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection provides to the person in charge written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant, that specifies that the excluded person may work as a food employee in a food establishment, including an establishment that serves a highly susceptible population, because the person is free of the infectious agent of concern as specified in §229.171(o)(4) of this title.

(C) The person in charge may remove a restriction specified under:

(i) paragraph (2)(E)(i) or (iii) of this subsection if the restricted person:

(I) is free of sore throat with fever as specified under paragraph (1)(B)(i)(IV) of this subsection or an infected wound or boil, as specified under

**§229.163(d)**

**§229.163(d)**

paragraph (1)(B)(ii) of this subsection, and no foodborne illness occurs that may have been caused by the restricted person;

(II) is suspected of causing foodborne illness but is free of the symptoms specified under paragraph (1)(B)(i) or (ii) of this subsection and provides written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant, stating that the restricted person is free of the infectious agent that is suspected of causing the person's symptoms or causing foodborne illness, as specified in §229.171(o)(4) of this title; or

(III) provides written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant, stating that the symptoms experienced result from a chronic noninfectious condition such as Crohn's disease, irritable bowel syndrome, or ulcerative colitis; or

(ii) paragraph (2)(E)(ii) of this subsection if the restricted person provides written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant, according to the criteria specified in §229.171(o)(4) of this title that indicates the stools are free of Norovirus, Salmonella typhi, or Shigella spp., or shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli, whichever is the infectious agent of concern.

(D) The person in charge may remove an exclusion specified under paragraph (2)(D) of this subsection if the excluded person provides written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant:

(i) that specifies that the person is free of the infectious agent of concern as specified in §229.171(o)(4) of this title; or

(ii) if the person is excluded under paragraph (2)(A) of this subsection stating that the symptoms experienced result from a chronic noninfectious condition such as Crohn's disease, irritable bowel syndrome, or ulcerative colitis.

(E) The person in charge may remove a jaundiced employee from an exclusion as specified under paragraph (2)(C) of this subsection, if:

(i) earlier than seven days, no foodborne illness occurs that may have been caused by the excluded or restricted person and the excluded food employee provides written medical documentation from a physician licensed to practice medicine or, if allowed by law, a nurse practitioner or physician assistant, that specifies that the person is free of hepatitis A virus and the excluded food employee is no longer infectious, as specified in §229.171(o)(4)(D)(i) of this title; or

**§229.163(d)**

**§229.163(f)**

(ii) the excluded or restricted person is suspected of causing foodborne illness and complies with the requirements in §229.171(o)(4)(D)(i) and (ii) of this title.

(4) Responsibility of a food employee or an applicant to report to the person in charge. A food employee or a person who applies for a job as a food employee shall:

(A) in a manner specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection, report to the person in charge the information specified under paragraph (1)(A)-(D) of this subsection; and

(B) comply with exclusions and restrictions that are specified under paragraph (2)(A)-(E) of this subsection.

#6 (5) Reporting by the person in charge. The person in charge shall notify the regulatory authority that a food employee is diagnosed with an illness due to Norovirus, Salmonella typhi, Shigella spp., shiga toxin-producing Escherichia coli, or hepatitis A virus.

#7 (e) Hands and arms, clean condition. Food employees shall keep their hands and exposed portions of their arms clean.

(f) Hands and arms cleaning procedure.

#7 (1) Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection, food employees shall clean their hands and exposed portions of their arms (or surrogate prosthetic devices for hands or arms) for at least 20 seconds, using a cleaning compound in a lavatory that is equipped as specified under §229.166(f)(2) of this title (relating to Water, Plumbing, and Waste).

(2) Food employees shall use the following cleaning procedure:

(A) vigorous friction on the surfaces of the lathered fingers, finger tips, areas between the fingers, hands and arms (or by vigorously rubbing the surrogate prosthetic devices for hands or arms) for at least 10 to 15 seconds, followed by;

(B) thorough rinsing under clean, running warm water; and

(C) immediately follow the cleaning procedure with thorough drying of cleaned hands and arms (or surrogate prosthetic devices) using a method as specified under §229.167(e)(3) of this title (relating to Physical Facilities).

(3) Food employees shall pay particular attention to the areas underneath the fingernails during the cleaning procedure.

**§229.163(f)**

(4) If approved and capable of removing the types of soils encountered in the food operations involved, an automatic handwashing facility may be used by food employees to clean their hands.

**§229.163(j)**

(g) Special handwash procedures. Employees not utilizing suitable utensils or single-use gloves when handling ready-to-eat foods shall wash hands using the cleaning procedures specified in subsection (f)(2) of this section and follow the approved procedures specified in §229.164(e)(1)(D) of this title.

#7, #11

(h) When to wash. Food employees shall clean their hands and exposed portions of their arms as specified under subsection (f) of this section immediately before engaging in food preparation including working with exposed food, clean equipment and utensils, and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles and:

#7

(1) after touching bare human body parts other than clean hands and clean, exposed portions of arms;

(2) after using the toilet room;

(3) after caring for or handling service animals or aquatic animals as specified in subsection (q)(2) of this section;

(4) except as specified in subsection (n)(2) of this section, after coughing, sneezing, using a handkerchief or disposable tissue, using tobacco, eating, or drinking;

(5) after handling soiled equipment or utensils;

(6) during food preparation, as often as necessary to remove soil and contamination and to prevent cross contamination when changing tasks;

(7) when switching between working with raw food and working with ready-to-eat food;

(8) before donning gloves for working with food; and

(9) after engaging in other activities that contaminate the hands.

(i) Where to wash. Food employees shall clean their hands in a handwashing lavatory or approved automatic handwashing facility and may not clean their hands in a sink used for food preparation or warewashing, or in a service sink or a curbed cleaning facility used for the disposal of mop water and similar liquid waste.

#8

(j) Hand sanitizers.

**§229.163(j)**

**§229.163(k)**

(1) A hand sanitizer and a chemical hand sanitizing solution used as a hand dip shall:

(A) comply with one of the following:

(i) be an approved drug that is listed in the FDA publication Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations as an approved drug based on safety and effectiveness; or

(ii) have active antimicrobial ingredients that are listed in the FDA monograph for over-the-counter (OTC) Health-Care Antiseptic Drug Products as an antiseptic handwash; and

(B) consist of components that are:

(i) listed for such use in contact with food in 21 CFR 178, Indirect Food Additives: Adjuvants, Production Aids, and Sanitizers; or

(ii) exempt from regulation as food additives under 21 CFR §170.39, Threshold of Regulation for Substances Used in Food-contact Articles; or

(iii) generally recognized as safe (GRAS) for the intended use in contact with food within the meaning of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act (FFDCA); or

(iv) permitted for such use by an effective Food Contact Substance Notification as defined by paragraph 409(h) of the FFDCA and listed in FDA's Inventory of Effective Premarket Notifications for Food Contact Substances; and

(C) be applied only to hands that are cleaned as specified under subsection (f) of this section.

**#20** (2) If a hand sanitizer or a chemical hand sanitizing solution used as a hand dip does not meet the criteria specified under paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection, use shall be:

(A) followed by thorough hand rinsing in clean water before hand contact with food or by the use of gloves; or

(B) limited to situations that involve no direct contact with food by the bare hands.

**#11,**  
**#20** (3) A chemical hand sanitizing solution used as a hand dip shall be maintained clean and at a strength equivalent to at least 100 mg/L chlorine.

(k) Fingernail maintenance.

**§229.163(k)**

**§229.163(p)**

(1) Food employees shall keep their fingernails trimmed, filed, and maintained so the edges and surfaces are cleanable and not rough.

(2) Unless wearing intact gloves in good repair, a food employee may not wear fingernail polish or artificial fingernails when working with exposed food.

(l) Jewelry prohibition. While preparing food, food employees may not wear jewelry including medical information jewelry on their arms and hands. This section does not apply to a plain ring such as a wedding band.

(m) Outer clothing clean condition. Food employees shall wear clean outer clothing to prevent contamination of food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

(n) Eating, drinking, or using tobacco.

(1) Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection, an employee shall eat, drink, or use any form of tobacco only in designated areas where the contamination of exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; unwrapped single-service and single-use articles; or other items needing protection cannot result.

#8

(2) A food employee may drink from a closed beverage container if the container is handled to prevent contamination of:

(A) the employee's hands;

(B) the container; and

(C) exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.

(o) Discharges from the eyes, nose, and mouth. Food employees experiencing persistent sneezing, coughing, or a runny nose that causes discharges from the eyes, nose, or mouth may not work with exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; or unwrapped single-service or single-use articles.

#6

(p) Hair restraints, effectiveness.

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, food employees shall wear hair restraints such as hats, hair coverings or nets, beard restraints, and clothing that covers body hair, that are designed and worn to effectively keep their hair from contacting exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.

**§229.163(p)**

**§229.163(q)**

(2) This section does not apply to food employees such as counter staff who only serve beverages and wrapped or packaged foods, hostesses, and wait staff if they present a minimal risk of contaminating exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.

(q) Handling prohibition.

#8

(1) Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection, food employees may not care for or handle animals that may be present such as patrol dogs, service animals, or pets that are allowed as specified in §229.167(p)(15)(B)(ii)-(v) of this title (relating to Physical Facilities).

#7

(2) Food employees with assistance animals may handle or care for their assistance animals and food employees may handle or care for fish in aquariums or molluscan shellfish or crustacea in display tanks if they wash their hands as specified under subsections (f) and (h)(3) of this section.



**§229.164(a)**

**§229.164(b)**

§229.164. Food.

(a) Condition safe, unadulterated, and honestly presented. Food shall be safe, unadulterated, and, as specified under subsection (q)(2) of this section, honestly presented.

#10

(b) Approved sources.

(1) Compliance with food law.

(A) Food shall be obtained from sources that comply with applicable laws and are licensed by the state regulatory authority having jurisdiction over the processing and distribution of the food.

#9

(B) Food prepared in a private home, except as allowed in these rules, or from an unlicensed food manufacturer or wholesaler, is considered to be from an unapproved source and may not be used or offered for human consumption in a food establishment.

(C) Packaged food shall be labeled as specified in law, including 21 CFR 101, Food Labeling, 9 CFR 317, Labeling, Marking Devices, and Containers, and 9 CFR 381 Subpart N, Labeling and Containers, and as specified under subsection (c)(7) and (8) of this section.

(D) Fish, other than molluscan shellfish, that are intended for consumption in their raw form and allowed as specified under subsection (k)(1)(D) of this section may be offered for sale or service if they are obtained from a supplier that freezes the fish as specified under subsection (l)(1) of this section; or frozen on the premises as specified under subsection (l)(1) of this section and records are retained as specified under subsection (l)(3) of this section.

(E) Whole-muscle, intact beef steaks that are intended for consumption in an undercooked form without a consumer advisory as specified in subsection (k)(1)(C) of this section shall be:

(i) obtained from a food processing plant that, upon request by the purchaser, packages the steaks and labels them, to indicate that the steaks meet the definition of whole-muscle, intact beef; or

(ii) deemed acceptable by the regulatory authority based on other evidence, such as written buyer specifications or invoices, that indicates that the steaks meet the definition of whole-muscle, intact beef; and

(iii) if individually cut in a food establishment:

**§229.164(b)**

**§229.164(b)**

#9

(I) cut from whole-muscle intact beef that is labeled by a food processing plant as specified in clause (i) or identified as specified in clause (ii) of this subparagraph;

(II) prepared so they remain intact; and

(III) if packaged for undercooking in a food establishment, labeled as specified in clause (i) or identified as specified in clause (ii) of this subparagraph.

(F) Meat and poultry that is not a ready-to-eat food and is in a packaged form when it is offered for sale or otherwise offered for consumption, shall be labeled to include safe handling instructions as specified in law, including 9 CFR §317.2(l) and 9 CFR §381.125(b).

(G) Shell eggs that have not been specifically treated to destroy all viable Salmonellae shall be labeled to include safe handling instructions as specified in law, including 21 CFR §101.17(h).

(2) Food in a hermetically sealed container. Food in a hermetically sealed container shall be obtained from a food processing plant that is regulated by the food regulatory agency that has jurisdiction over the plant.

(3) Fluid milk and milk products. Fluid milk and milk products shall be obtained from sources that comply with Grade A standards as specified in law.

(4) Fish.

(A) Fish that are received for sale or service shall be:

(i) commercially and legally caught or harvested; or

(ii) approved for sale or service.

(B) Molluscan shellfish that are recreationally caught may not be received for sale or service.

(5) Molluscan shellfish.

(A) Molluscan shellfish shall be obtained from sources according to law and the requirements specified in the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Food and Drug Administration, National Shellfish Sanitation Program Guide for the Control of Molluscan Shellfish.

§229.164(b)

§229.164(b)

(B) Molluscan shellfish received in interstate commerce shall be from sources that are listed in the Interstate Certified Shellfish Shippers List.

#9

(6) Wild mushrooms.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, mushroom species picked in the wild shall be obtained from sources where each mushroom is individually inspected and found to be safe by an approved mushroom identification expert.

(B) This section does not apply to:

(i) cultivated wild mushroom species that are grown, harvested, and processed in an operation that is regulated by the food regulatory agency that has jurisdiction over the operation; or

(ii) wild mushroom species if they are in packaged form and are the product of a food processing plant that is regulated by the food regulatory agency that has jurisdiction over the plant.

(7) Exotic animals and game animals.

#9

(A) If exotic animals are received for sale or service, they shall:

(i) be commercially raised for food and:

(I) slaughtered, processed, and deemed to be “inspected and approved” under an inspection program administered by USDA in accordance with 9 CFR 352, Exotic Animals; Voluntary Inspection; or

(II) slaughtered, processed, and deemed to be “inspected and passed” under a meat and poultry inspection program administered by the department or any other state meat inspection program deemed equal to USDA inspection;

(ii) as allowed by law, for exotic animals that are live caught, be slaughtered and processed as required in subparagraph (A)(i)(I) or (II) of this paragraph; and

(iii) as allowed by law, for exotic animals that are field dressed:

(I) receive an antemortem and postmortem examination by the appropriate inspection personnel as described in subparagraph (A)(i)(I) or (II) of this paragraph; and

#9

(II) be field dressed, transported, and processed according to the requirements specified by the appropriate regulatory authority as described in paragraph (7)(A)(i)(I) or (II) of this subsection.

(B) If game animals are received for sale or service they shall be:

(i) commercially raised for food and:

(I) raised, slaughtered, and processed under a voluntary inspection program that is conducted by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction; or

(II) under a routine inspection program conducted by a regulatory agency other than the agency that has animal health jurisdiction; and

(III) raised, slaughtered, and processed according to:

(-a-) laws governing meat and poultry as determined by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction and the agency that conducts the inspection program; and

(-b-) requirements which are developed by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction and the agency that conducts the inspection program with consideration of factors such as the need for antemortem and postmortem examination by an approved veterinarian or veterinarian's designee;

(ii) under a voluntary inspection program administered by the USDA for game animals such as exotic animals (reindeer, elk, deer, antelope, water buffalo, or bison) that are "inspected and approved" in accordance with 9 CFR 352, Exotic Animals; Voluntary Inspection or rabbits that are "inspected and certified" in accordance with 9 CFR 354, Voluntary Inspection of Rabbits and Edible Products Thereof;

(iii) as allowed by law, for wild game animals that are live-caught:

(I) under a routine inspection program conducted by a regulatory agency such as the agency that has animal health jurisdiction; and

(II) slaughtered and processed according to:

(-a-) laws governing meat and poultry as determined by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction and the agency that conducts the inspection program; and

(-b-) requirements which are developed by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction and the agency that conducts the inspection program

**§229.164(b)**

**§229.164(c)**

with consideration of factors such as the need for antemortem and postmortem examination by an approved veterinarian or veterinarian's designee; or

#9

(iv) as allowed by law, for field-dressed wild game animals under a routine inspection program that ensures the animals:

(I) receive a postmortem examination by an approved veterinarian or veterinarian's designee; or

(II) are field-dressed and transported according to requirements specified by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction and the agency that conducts the inspection program; and

(III) are processed according to laws governing meat and poultry as determined by the agency that has animal health jurisdiction and the agency that conducts the inspection program.

(C) A game animal may not be received for sale or service if it is a species of wildlife that is listed in 50 CFR 17, Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants.

(c) Specifications for receiving.

(1) Temperature.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, refrigerated, potentially hazardous food shall be at a temperature of 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or below when received.

#2

(B) If a temperature other than 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) for a potentially hazardous food is specified in law governing its distribution, such as laws governing milk and molluscan shellfish, the food may be received at the specified temperature.

(C) Raw shell eggs shall be received in refrigerated equipment that maintains an ambient air temperature of 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less.

(D) Potentially hazardous food that is cooked to a temperature and for a time specified under subsection (k) of this section and received hot shall be at a temperature of 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) or above.

#3

(E) A food that is labeled frozen and shipped frozen by a food processing plant shall be received frozen.

#2

(F) Upon receipt, potentially hazardous food shall be free of evidence of previous temperature abuse.

#2, #3

§229.164(c)

§229.164(c)

#10 (2) Additives. Food may not contain unapproved food additives or additives that exceed amounts specified in 21 CFR 170-180 relating to food additives, generally recognized as safe or prior sanctioned substances that exceed amounts specified in 21 CFR 181-186, substances that exceed amounts specified in 9 CFR Subpart C, §424.21(b), food ingredients and sources of radiation, or pesticide residues that exceed provisions specified in 40 CFR 180, Tolerances and Exemptions From Tolerances for Pesticide Chemicals in Food.

(3) Shell eggs. Shell eggs shall be received clean and sound and may not exceed the restricted egg tolerances for U.S. Consumer Grade B as specified in 7 CFR 56, Voluntary Grading of Shell Eggs and United States Standards, Grades, and Weight Classes for Shell Eggs, and 9 CFR 590, Inspection of Eggs and Egg Products.

(4) Eggs and milk products, pasteurized.

#9 (A) Liquid, frozen, and dry eggs and egg products shall be obtained pasteurized.

(B) Fluid and dry milk and milk products complying with grade A standards as specified in law shall be obtained pasteurized.

(C) Frozen milk products, such as ice cream, shall be obtained pasteurized in accordance with the Texas Frozen Desserts Manufacturing Act, Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 440.

(D) Cheese shall be obtained pasteurized unless alternative procedures to pasteurization are specified in the CFR, such as 21 CFR 133, Cheeses and Related Cheese Products, for curing certain cheese varieties.

#10 (5) Package integrity. Food packages shall be in good condition and protect the integrity of the contents so that the food is not exposed to adulteration or potential contaminants.

#9 (6) Ice. Ice for use as a food or a cooling medium shall be made from drinking water.

(7) Shucked shellfish, packaging and identification.

(A) Raw shucked shellfish shall be obtained in nonreturnable packages which bear a legible label that identifies the:

(i) name, address, and certification number of the shucker-packer or repacker of the molluscan shellfish; and

§229.164(c)

§229.164(c)

(ii) the “sell by” date for packages with a capacity of less than 1.87 L (one-half gallon) or the date shucked for packages with a capacity of 1.87 L (one-half gallon) or more.

(B) A package of raw shucked shellfish that does not bear a label or which bears a label which does not contain all the information as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph shall be subject to detention as provided in Health and Safety Code, Chapter 436.

(8) Shellstock identification.

#9

(A) Shellstock shall be obtained in containers bearing legible source identification tags or labels that are affixed by the harvester and each dealer that depurates, ships, or reships the shellstock, as specified in the Texas Molluscan Shellfish Rules, 25 TAC, Chapter 241, §§241.50 - 241.71, and that list:

(i) except as specified under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, on the harvester's tag or label, the following information in the following order:

(I) the harvester's identification number that is assigned by the shellfish control authority;

(II) the date of harvesting;

(III) the most precise identification of the harvest location or aquaculture site that is practicable based on the system of harvest area designations that is in use by the shellfish control authority and including the abbreviation of the name of the state or country in which the shellfish are harvested;

(IV) the type and quantity of shellfish; and

(V) the following statement in bold, capitalized type: **“THIS TAG IS REQUIRED TO BE ATTACHED UNTIL CONTAINER IS EMPTY OR RETAGGED AND THEREAFTER KEPT ON FILE FOR 90 DAYS”**; and

(ii) except as specified in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, on each dealer's tag or label, the following information in the following order:

(I) the dealer's name and address, and the certification number assigned by the shellfish control authority;

(II) the original shipper's certification number including the abbreviation of the name of the state or country in which the shellfish are harvested;

§229.164(c)

§229.164(d)

#9

(III) the same information as specified for a harvester's tag under clause (i)(II)-(IV) of this subparagraph;

(IV) the following statement in bold, capitalized type: **“THIS TAG IS REQUIRED TO BE ATTACHED UNTIL CONTAINER IS EMPTY AND THEREAFTER KEPT ON FILE FOR 90 DAYS”**; and

(V) the consumer information statement required as specified in subsection (s) of this section.

(B) A container of shellstock that does not bear a tag or label or that bears a tag or label that does not contain all the information as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph shall be subject to detention as provided in Health and Safety Code, Chapter 436.

(C) If a place is provided on the harvester's tag or label for a dealer's name, address, and certification number, the dealer's information shall be listed first.

(D) If the harvester's tag or label is designed to accommodate each dealer's identification as specified under subparagraph (A)(ii)(I) and (II) of this paragraph, individual dealer tags or labels need not be provided.

(9) Shellstock, condition. When received by a food establishment, shellstock shall be reasonably free of mud, dead shellfish, and shellfish with broken shells. Dead shellfish or shellstock with badly broken shells shall be discarded.

#9

(10) Juice treated. Pre-packaged juice shall:

(A) be obtained from a processor with a HACCP system as specified in 21 CFR 120;

(B) be obtained pasteurized or otherwise treated to attain a 5-log reduction of the most resistant microorganism of public health significance as specified in 21 CFR §120.24; or

(C) bear a warning label as specified in 21 CFR §101.17(g).

(d) Molluscan shellfish, maintaining identification.

(1) Except as specified in paragraphs (2)-(4) of this subsection, molluscan shellfish may not be removed from the container in which they are received other than immediately before sale or preparation for service.

(2) For display purposes, shellstock may be removed from the container in which they are received, displayed on drained ice, or held in a display container maintained at 41



**§229.164(d)**

**§229.164(d)**

degrees Fahrenheit, and a quantity specified by a consumer may be removed from the display or display container and provided to the consumer if:

(A) the source of the shellstock on display is identified as specified under subsection (c)(8) of this section and recorded as specified under paragraph (5) of this subsection; and

(B) the shellstock are protected from contamination.

(3) Shucked shellfish may be removed from the container in which they were received and held in a display container maintained at or below 41 degrees Fahrenheit from which individual servings are dispensed upon a consumer's request if:

(A) the labeling information for the shellfish on display as specified under subsection (c)(7) of this section is retained and correlated to the date when, or dates during which, the shellfish are sold or served; and

(B) the shellfish are protected from contamination.

(4) Shucked shellfish may be removed from the container in which they were received and repacked in consumer self service containers where allowed by law if:

(A) the labeling information for the shellfish is on each container as specified under subsection (c)(7) of this section and subsection (r) of this section; and

(B) the labeling information as specified under subsection (c)(7) of this section is retained which correlates with the date when, or dates during which, the shellfish are sold or served;

(C) is maintained for 90 days; and

(D) the shellfish are protected from contamination.

(5) Shellstock, tags.

(A) Except as specified under subparagraph (B)(ii) of this paragraph, shellstock tags shall remain attached to the container in which the shellstock are received until the container is empty.

#9

(B) The identity of the source of shellstock that are sold or served shall be maintained by retaining shellstock tags or labels for 90 calendar days from the date the container is emptied by:

**§229.164(d)**

**§229.164(e)**

**#9** (i) using an approved record keeping system that keeps the tags or labels in chronological order correlated to the date when, or dates during which, the shellstock are sold or served; and

container:

(I) preserving source identification by using a record keeping system as specified under clause (i) of this subparagraph; and

(II) ensuring that shellstock from one tagged or labeled container are not commingled with shellstock from another container with different shellfish certification numbers, different harvest dates or different growing areas as identified on the tag or label.

(e) Preventing contamination by employees.

(1) Preventing contamination from hands.

**#7** (A) Food employees shall wash their hands as specified under §229.163(f) of this title (relating to Management and Personnel).

**#11** (B) Except when washing fruits and vegetables as specified under subsection (f)(6) of this section or as specified in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, food employees may not contact exposed, ready-to-eat food with their bare hands and shall use suitable utensils such as deli tissue, spatulas, tongs, single-use gloves, or dispensing equipment.

**#8** (C) Food employees shall minimize bare hand and arm contact with exposed food that is not in a ready-to-eat form.

**#11** (D) Food employees not serving a highly susceptible population may contact exposed, ready-to-eat food with their bare hands if:

(i) documentation is maintained at the food establishment that food employees acknowledge that they have received training in:

(I) the risks of contacting the specific ready-to-eat foods with bare hands;

(II) proper handwashing as specified under §229.163(f) of this title;

(III) when to wash their hands as specified under §229.163(h) of this title;

**§229.164(e)**

**§229.164(f)**

§229.163(i) of this title; (IV) where to wash their hands as specified under #11  
§229.163(k) of this title; (V) proper fingernail maintenance as specified under  
of this title; (VI) prohibition of jewelry as specified under §229.163(l)  
§229.163(o) of this title; and (VII) good hygienic practices as related to §229.163(n) and

(VIII) employee health policies that detail how the food establishment complies with §§229.163(d)(1)-(5) of this title;

(ii) documentation is maintained at the food establishment that food employees contacting ready-to-eat foods with bare hands utilize two or more of the following control measures to provide additional safeguards to hazards associated with bare hand contact:

(I) double handwashing;  
(II) nail brushes;  
(III) a hand sanitizer after handwashing as specified under  
§229.163(j) of this title; (IV) incentive programs that assist or encourage food employees not to work when they are ill such as paid sick leave; or  
(V) other control measures approved by the regulatory authority; and

(iii) documentation is maintained at the food establishment that corrective actions are taken when clauses (i)-(ii) of this subparagraph are not followed.

(2) Preventing contamination when tasting. A food employee may not use a utensil more than once to taste food that is to be sold or served. #12

(f) Preventing food and ingredient contamination.

(1) General. At all times, including while being stored, prepared, displayed, served, or transported, food shall be protected from potential contamination.

(2) Packaged and unpackaged food - separation, packaging, and segregation. #12

#12

(A) Food shall be protected from cross contamination by:

(i) separating raw animal foods during storage, preparation, holding, and display from:

(I) raw ready-to-eat food including other raw animal food such as fish for sushi or molluscan shellfish, or other raw ready-to-eat food such as vegetables; and

(II) cooked ready-to-eat food;

(ii) except when combined as ingredients, separating types of raw animal foods from each other such as beef, fish, lamb, pork, and poultry during storage, preparation, holding, and display by:

(I) using separate equipment for each type; or

(II) arranging each type of food in equipment so that cross contamination of one type with another is prevented; and

(III) preparing each type of food at different times or in separate areas;

(iii) cleaning equipment and utensils as specified under §229.165(n)(1) of this title (relating to Equipment, Utensils, and Linens), and sanitizing as specified under §229.165(r) of this title;

(iv) except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, storing the food in packages, covered containers, or wrappings;

(v) cleaning hermetically sealed containers of food of visible soil before opening;

(vi) protecting food containers that are received packaged together in a case or overwrap from cuts when the case or overwrap is opened;

(vii) storing damaged, spoiled, or recalled food being held in the food establishment as specified under §229.167(n) of this title; and

(viii) separating fruits and vegetables, before they are washed as specified under paragraph (6) of this subsection from ready-to-eat food.

(B) Subparagraph (A)(iv) of this paragraph does not apply to:

**§229.164(f)**

**§229.164(f)**

(i) whole, uncut, raw fruits and vegetables and nuts in the shell, that require peeling or hulling before consumption;

(ii) primal cuts, quarters, or sides of raw meat or slab bacon that are hung on clean, sanitized hooks or placed on clean, sanitized racks;

(iii) whole, uncut, processed meats such as country hams, and smoked or cured sausages that are placed on clean, sanitized racks;

(iv) food being cooled as specified under subsection (o)(5)(B)(ii) of this section; or

(v) shellstock.

(3) Food storage containers, identified with common name of food. Working containers holding food or food ingredients that are removed from their original packages for use in the food establishment, such as cooking oils, flour, herbs, potato flakes, salt, spices, and sugar shall be identified with the common name of the food except that containers holding food that can be readily and unmistakably recognized such as dry pasta need not be identified.

(4) Pasteurized eggs, substitute for raw shell eggs for certain recipes. Pasteurized eggs or egg products shall be substituted for raw shell eggs in the preparation of foods such as Caesar salad, hollandaise or béarnaise sauce, mayonnaise, meringue, eggnog, ice cream, and egg-fortified beverages that are not:

#9

(A) cooked as specified under subsection (k)(1)(A)(i) or (ii) of this section; or

(B) included under subsection (k)(1)(D) of this section.

(5) Protection from unapproved additives.

(A) Food shall be protected from contamination that may result from the addition of, as specified in subsection (c)(2) of this section:

#10

(i) unsafe or unapproved food or color additives; and

(ii) unsafe or unapproved levels of approved food and color additives.

(B) A food employee may not:

(i) apply sulfiting agents to fresh fruits and vegetables intended for raw consumption or to a food considered to be a good source of vitamin B1; or

**§229.164(f)**

**§229.164(h)**

#10

(ii) serve or sell food specified under clause (i) of this subparagraph that is treated with sulfiting agents before receipt by the food establishment, except that grapes need not meet this subparagraph.

(6) Washing fruits and vegetables.

(A) Raw fruits and vegetables shall be thoroughly washed in water to remove soil and other contaminants before being cut, combined with other ingredients, cooked, served, or offered for human consumption in ready-to-eat form except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph of this section and except that whole, raw fruits and vegetables that are intended for washing by the consumer before consumption need not be washed before they are sold.

(B) Fruits and vegetables may be washed by using chemicals as specified under §229.168(f)(2) of this title (relating to Poisonous or Toxic Materials).

(g) Preventing contamination from ice used as a coolant.

#12

(1) Ice used as exterior coolant, prohibited as ingredient. After use as a medium for cooling the exterior surfaces of food such as melons or fish, packaged foods such as canned beverages, or cooling coils and tubes of equipment, ice may not be used as food.

(2) Storage or display of food in contact with water or ice.

(A) Packaged food may not be stored in direct contact with ice or water if the food is subject to the entry of water because of the nature of its packaging, wrapping, or container or its positioning in the ice or water.

(B) Except as specified in subparagraphs (C) and (D) of this paragraph, unpackaged food may not be stored in direct contact with undrained ice.

(C) Whole, raw fruits or vegetables; cut, raw vegetables such as celery or carrot sticks or cut potatoes; and tofu may be immersed in ice or water.

(D) Raw chicken and raw fish that are received immersed in ice in shipping containers may remain in that condition while in storage awaiting preparation, display, service, or sale.

(h) Preventing contamination from equipment, utensils, and linens.

(1) Food contact with equipment and utensils. Food shall only contact surfaces of equipment and utensils that are cleaned as specified under §229.165(m)-(o) of this title, and sanitized as specified under §229.165(p)-(r) of this title.

**§229.164(h)**

**§229.164(h)**

(2) In-use utensils, between-use storage. During pauses in food preparation or dispensing, food preparation and dispensing utensils shall be stored:

(A) except as specified under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, in the food with their handles above the top of the food and the container;

(B) in food that is not potentially hazardous with their handles above the top of the food within containers or equipment that can be closed, such as bins of sugar, flour, or cinnamon;

(C) on a clean portion of the food preparation table or cooking equipment only if the in-use utensil and the food-contact surface of the food preparation table or cooking equipment are cleaned and sanitized at a frequency specified under §§229.165(n)(1) and (q) of this title;

(D) in running water of sufficient velocity to flush particulates to the drain, if used with moist food such as ice cream or mashed potatoes;

(E) in a clean, protected location if the utensils, such as ice scoops, are used only with a food that is not potentially hazardous; or

(F) in a container of water if the water is maintained at a temperature of at least 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) and the container is cleaned at a frequency specified under §229.165(n)(1)(D)(vii) of this title.

(3) Linens and napkins, use limitation. Linens and napkins may not be used in contact with food unless they are used to line a container for the service of foods and the linens and napkins are replaced each time the container is refilled for a new consumer.

(4) Wiping cloths, use limitation.

(A) Cloths that are in use for wiping food spills shall be used for no other purpose.

(B) Cloths used for wiping food spills shall be:

(i) dry and used for wiping food spills from tableware and carry-out containers; or

(ii) wet and cleaned as specified under §229.165(t)(4) of this title, stored in a chemical sanitizer at a concentration specified in §229.165(k)(14) of this title, and used for wiping spills from food-contact and nonfood-contact surfaces of equipment.

**§229.164(h)**

**§229.164(h)**

(C) Dry or wet cloths that are used with raw animal foods shall be kept separate from cloths used for other purposes, and wet cloths used with raw animal foods shall be kept in a separate sanitizing solution.

(D) Wet wiping cloths used with a freshly made sanitizing solution and dry wiping cloths shall be free of food debris and visible soil.

(E) Working containers of sanitizing solutions for storage of in-use wiping cloths may be placed above the floor and used in a manner to prevent contamination of food, equipment, utensils, linens, single-service or single-use articles.

(5) Gloves, use limitation.

#11, #12 (A) If used, single-use gloves shall be used for only one task such as working with ready-to-eat food or with raw animal food, used for no other purpose, and discarded when damaged or soiled, or when interruptions occur in the operation.

#12 (B) Except as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, slash-resistant gloves that are used to protect the hands during operations requiring cutting shall be used in direct contact only with food that is subsequently cooked as specified under subsection (k) of this section such as frozen food or a primal cut of meat.

#11, #12 (C) Slash-resistant gloves may be used with ready-to-eat food that will not be subsequently cooked if the slash-resistant gloves have a smooth, durable, and nonabsorbent outer surface; or if the slash-resistant gloves are covered with a smooth, durable, nonabsorbent glove, or a single-use glove.

#12 (D) Cloth gloves may not be used in direct contact with food unless the food is subsequently cooked as required under subsection (k) of this section such as frozen food or a primal cut of meat.

(6) Using clean tableware for second portions and refills.

(A) Except for refilling a consumer's drinking cup or container without contact between the pouring utensil and the lip-contact area of the drinking cup or container, food employees may not use tableware, including single-service articles, soiled by the consumer, to provide second portions or refills.

#26 (B) Except as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, self-service consumers may not be allowed to use soiled tableware, including single-service articles, to obtain additional food from the display and serving equipment. A card, sign or other effective means of notification shall be displayed to notify consumers that clean tableware is to be used upon return to self-service areas such as salad bars and buffets.



**§229.164(h)**

(C) Drinking cups and containers may be reused by self-service consumers if refilling is a contamination-free process as specified under §229.165(f)(3)(A), (B), and (D) of this title.

(7) Refilling returnables.

(A) A take-home food container returned to a food establishment may not be refilled at a food establishment with a potentially hazardous food.

(B) Except as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, a take-home food container refilled with food that is not potentially hazardous shall be cleaned as specified in §229.165(o)(7)(B) of this title.

(C) Personal take-out beverage containers, such as thermally insulated bottles, nonspill coffee cups, and promotional beverage glasses, may be refilled by employees or the consumer if refilling is a contamination-free process as specified in §229.165(f)(3)(A), (B), and (D) of this title.

(i) Preventing contamination from the premises.

(1) Food storage.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph, food shall be protected from contamination by storing the food:

(i) in a clean, dry location;

(ii) where it is not exposed to splash, dust, or other contamination;

and

(iii) at least 15 cm (6 inches) above the floor.

(B) Food in packages and working containers may be stored less than 15 cm (6 inches) above the floor on case lot handling equipment as specified in §229.165(f)(22) of this title.

(C) Pressurized beverage containers, cased food in waterproof containers such as bottles or cans, and milk containers in plastic crates may be stored on a floor that is clean and not exposed to floor moisture.

(2) Food storage, prohibited areas. Food may not be stored:

(A) in locker rooms;

**§229.164(i)**

**§229.164(i)**

**§229.164(j)**

(B) in toilet rooms;

(C) in dressing rooms;

(D) in garbage rooms;

(E) in mechanical rooms;

(F) under sewer lines that are not shielded to intercept potential drips;

(G) under leaking water lines, including leaking automatic fire sprinkler heads, or under lines on which water has condensed;

(H) under open stairwells; or

(I) under other sources of contamination.

(3) Vended potentially hazardous food, original container. Potentially hazardous food dispensed through a vending machine shall be in the package in which it was placed at the food establishment or food processing plant at which it was prepared.

(4) Food preparation. During preparation, unpackaged food shall be protected from environmental sources of contamination.

(j) Preventing contamination by consumers.

(1) Food display. Except for nuts in the shell and whole, raw fruits and vegetables that are intended for hulling, peeling, or washing by the consumer before consumption, food on display shall be protected from contamination by the use of packaging; counter, service line, or salad bar food guards; display cases; or other effective means.

(2) Condiments, protection.

(A) Condiments shall be protected from contamination by being kept in dispensers that are designed to provide protection, protected food displays provided with the proper utensils, original containers designed for dispensing, or individual packages or portions.

(B) Condiments at a vending machine location shall be in individual packages or provided in dispensers that are filled at an approved location, such as the food establishment that provides food to the vending machine location, a food processing plant that is regulated by the agency that has jurisdiction over the operation, or a properly equipped facility that is located on the site of the vending machine location.

(3) Consumer self-service operations.

**§229.164(j)**

**§229.164(j)**

#12

(A) Raw, unpackaged animal food, such as beef, lamb, pork, poultry, and fish may not be offered for consumer self-service. This paragraph does not apply to:

(i) consumer self-service of ready-to-eat foods at buffets or salad bars that serve foods such as sushi or raw shellfish;

(ii) ready-to-cook individual portions for immediate cooking and consumption on the premises such as consumer-cooked meats or consumer-selected ingredients for Mongolian barbecue; or

(iii) raw, frozen, shell-on shrimp or lobster.

(B) Consumer self-service operations for ready-to-eat foods shall be provided with suitable utensils or effective dispensing methods that protect the food from contamination.

(C) Consumer self-service operations such as buffets and salad bars shall be monitored by food employees trained in safe operating procedures.

(D) A person may sell unpackaged food that is not potentially hazardous, that is displayed, and sold in bulk from a self-service container if:

(i) the self-service container has a tight-fitting lid that is securely attached to the container; and

(ii) the container, lid and any utensil are constructed of nontoxic materials that provide for easy cleaning and proper repair.

(E) The lid of a gravity feed type container shall be kept closed except when the container is being serviced or refilled.

(F) The lid of a scoop utensil type container shall be kept closed except during customer service. The container must have a utensil, equipped with a handle, to be used in dispensing the food.

(G) The seller shall:

(i) keep the container, lid, and any utensil sanitary to prevent spoilage and insect infestation; and

(ii) post in the immediate display area a conspicuous sign that instructs the customer on the proper procedure for dispensing the food.

(4) Returned food and reservice of food.

**§229.164(j)**

**§229.164(k)**

#12 (A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, after being served or sold and in the possession of a consumer, food that is unused or returned by the consumer may not be offered as food for human consumption.

(B) A container of food that is not potentially hazardous may be transferred from one consumer to another if:

(i) the food is dispensed so that it is protected from contamination and the container is closed between uses, such as a narrow-neck bottle containing catsup, steak sauce, or wine; or

(ii) the food, such as crackers, salt, or pepper, is in an unopened original package and is maintained in sound condition.

#12 (5) Preventing contamination from other sources. Food shall be protected from contamination that may result from a factor or source not specified in subsections (e)-(j) of this section.

(k) Cooking.

(1) Raw animal foods.

#4 (A) Except as specified under subparagraphs (B)-(D) of this paragraph, raw animal foods such as eggs, fish, meat, poultry, and foods containing these raw animal foods, shall be cooked to heat all parts of the food to a temperature and for a time that complies with one of the following methods based on the food that is being cooked:

(i) 63 degrees Celsius (145 degrees Fahrenheit) or above for 15 seconds for:

(I) raw shell eggs that are broken and prepared in response to a consumer's order and for immediate service; and

(II) except as specified under clauses (ii) and (iii) of this subparagraph, and subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, fish, meat, and pork including game animals and exotic animals commercially raised for food as specified under subsection (b)(7)(A)(i) and (b)(7)(B)(i) of this section and game animals under a voluntary inspection program as specified under subsection (b)(7)(B)(ii) of this section;

(ii) 68 degrees Celsius (155 degrees Fahrenheit) for 15 seconds or the temperature specified in the following chart that corresponds to the holding time for ratites and injected meats; the following if they are comminuted: fish, meat, game animals and exotic animals commercially raised for food as specified under subsection (b)(7)(A)(i) and (b)(7)(B)(i) of this section, and game animals and exotic animals under a voluntary inspection program as

**§229.164(k)**

**§229.164(k)**

specified under subsection (b)(7)(B)(ii) of this section; and raw eggs that are not prepared as specified under clause (i)(I) of this subparagraph; or

#4

Figure 1: 25 TAC §229.164(k)(1)(A)(ii)

Cooking Raw Animal Foods  
 Alternatives to the 155 Degree Fahrenheit/15 Second Requirement

Minimum Temperature °C (°F)	Minimum Time
63 (145)	3 minutes
66 (150)	1 minute
70 (158)	< 1 second (instantaneous)

(iii) 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit) or above for 15 seconds for poultry, wild game animals and exotic animals as specified under subsection (b)(7)(A)(iii) and (b)(7)(B)(iii) and (iv) of this section, stuffed fish, stuffed meat, stuffed pasta, stuffed poultry, stuffed ratites, or stuffing containing fish, meat, poultry, or ratites.

(B) Whole beef roasts, corned beef roasts, pork roasts, and cured pork roasts such as ham, shall be cooked:

(i) in an oven that is preheated to the temperature specified for the roast's weight in the following chart and that is held at that temperature; and

Figure 1: 25 TAC §229.164(k)(1)(B)(i)

Cooking Whole Beef or Corned Beef Roasts  
 Oven Preheating/Holding Requirements Per Weight

Oven Type	Oven Temperature Based on Roast Weight	
	Less than 4.5 kg (10 lbs)	4.5 kg (10 lbs) or More
Still Dry	177° C (350° F) or more	121° C (250° F) or more
Convection	121° C (250° F) or more	121° C (250° F) or more
<b>High Humidity</b> <sup>1</sup>	121° C (250° F) or more	121° C (250° F) or more

<sup>1</sup> Relative humidity greater than 90% for at least 1 hour as measures in the cooking chamber or exit of the oven ; or in a moisture-impermeable bag that provides 100% humidity.

#4

(ii) as specified in the following chart, to heat all parts of the food to a temperature and for the holding time that corresponds to that temperature.

Figure 1: 25 TAC §229.164(k)(1)(B)(ii)

Cooking Whole Beef or Corned Beef Roasts  
Heating Temperatures and Holding Times

Temperature °C (°F)	Time <sup>1</sup> in Minutes	Temperature °C (°F)	Time <sup>1</sup> in Seconds
54.4 (130)	112	63.9 (147)	134
55.0 (131)	89	65.0 (149)	85
56.1 (133)	56	66.1 (151)	54
57.2 (135)	36	67.2 (153)	34
57.8 (136)	28	68.3 (155)	22
58.9 (138)	18	69.4 (157)	14
60.0 (140)	12	70.0 (158)	0
61.1 (142)	8		
62.2 (144)	5		
62.8 (145)	4		

<sup>1</sup> Holding time may include postover heat rise.

(C) A raw or undercooked whole-muscle, intact beef steak may be served or offered for sale in a ready-to-eat form if:

(i) the food establishment serves a population that is not a highly susceptible population;

(ii) the steak is labeled to indicate that it meets the definition of “whole-muscle, intact beef” as specified under subsection (b)(1)(E) of this section; and

(iii) the steak is cooked on both the top and bottom to a surface temperature of 63 degrees Celsius (145 degrees Fahrenheit) or above and a cooked color change is achieved on all external surfaces.

(D) A raw animal food such as raw egg, raw fish, raw-marinated fish, raw molluscan shellfish, or steak tartare; or a partially cooked food such as lightly cooked fish, soft cooked eggs, or rare meat other than whole-muscle, intact beef steaks as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, may be served or offered for sale upon consumer request or selection in a ready-to-eat form if:

(i) as specified under subsection (u)(3)(A) and (B) of this section, the food establishment serves a population that is not a highly susceptible population; and

**§229.164(k)**

**§229.164(l)**

#4

(ii) the consumer is informed as specified under subsection (s) of this section that to ensure its safety, the food should be cooked as specified under subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph; or

(iii) the regulatory authority grants a variance from subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph as specified in §229.171(c) of this title (relating to Compliance and Enforcement) based on a HACCP plan that:

(I) is submitted by the permit holder and approved as specified under §229.171(c)(2) of this title;

(II) documents scientific data or other information showing that a lesser time and temperature regimen results in a safe food; and

(III) verifies that equipment and procedures for food preparation and training of food employees at the food establishment meet the conditions of the variance.

(2) Microwave cooking. Raw animal foods cooked in a microwave oven shall be:

(A) rotated or stirred throughout or midway during cooking to compensate for uneven distribution of heat;

(B) covered to retain surface moisture;

(C) heated to a temperature of at least 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit) in all parts of the food; and

(D) allowed to stand covered for 2 minutes after cooking to obtain temperature equilibrium.

(3) Plant food cooking for hot holding. Fruits and vegetables that are cooked for hot holding shall be cooked to a temperature of 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit).

(l) Freezing.

(1) Parasite destruction. Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection, before service or sale in ready-to-eat form, raw, raw-marinated, partially cooked, or marinated-partially cooked fish other than molluscan shellfish shall be:

#10

(A) frozen and stored at a temperature of -20 degrees Celsius (-4 degrees Fahrenheit) or below for 168 hours (7 days) in a freezer; or

**§229.164(l)**

**§229.164(m)**

**#10** (B) frozen at -35 degrees Celsius (-31 degrees Fahrenheit) or below until solid and stored at -35 degrees Celsius (-31 degrees Fahrenheit) for 15 hours.

(2) If the fish are tuna of the species Thunnus alalunga, Thunnus albacares (Yellowfin tuna), Thunnus atlanticus, Thunnus maccoyii (Bluefin tuna, Southern), Thunnus obesus (Bigeye tuna), or Thunnus thynnus (Bluefin tuna, Northern), the fish may be served or sold in a raw, raw-marinated, or partially cooked ready-to-eat form without freezing as specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) Records, creation and retention.

(A) Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection and subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, if raw, raw-marinated, partially cooked, or marinated-partially cooked fish are served or sold in ready-to-eat form, the person in charge shall record the freezing temperature and time to which the fish are subjected and shall retain the records of the food establishment for 90 calendar days beyond the time of service or sale of the fish.

(B) If the fish are frozen by a supplier, a written agreement or statement from the supplier stipulating that the fish supplied are frozen to a temperature and for a time specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection, may substitute for the records specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph.

(m) Reheating.

(1) Preparation for immediate service. Cooked and refrigerated food that is prepared for immediate service in response to an individual consumer order, such as a roast beef sandwich au jus, may be served at any temperature.

(2) Reheating for hot holding.

**#5** (A) Except as specified under subparagraphs (B), (C) and in (E) of this paragraph, potentially hazardous food that is cooked, cooled, and reheated for hot holding shall be reheated so that all parts of the food reach a temperature of at least 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit) for 15 seconds.

(B) Except as specified under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, potentially hazardous food reheated in a microwave oven for hot holding shall be reheated so that all parts of the food reach a temperature of at least 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit) and the food is rotated or stirred, covered, and allowed to stand covered for 2 minutes after reheating.

(C) Ready-to-eat food taken from a commercially processed, hermetically sealed container, or from an intact package from a food processing plant that is inspected by the food regulatory authority that has jurisdiction over the plant, shall be heated to a temperature of at least 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) for hot holding.



**§229.164(m)**

**§229.164(o)**

(D) Reheating for hot holding shall be done rapidly and the time the food is between the temperature specified under subsection (o)(6)(B) of this section and 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit) may not exceed two hours.

#5

(E) Remaining unsliced portions of roasts that are cooked as specified under subsection (k)(1)(B) of this section, may be reheated for hot holding using the oven parameters and minimum time and temperature conditions specified under subsection (k)(1)(B) of this section.

(n) Treating juice. Juice packaged in a food establishment shall be:

#13

(1) treated under a HACCP plan as specified in §229.171(d)(2)(B)-(D) of this title (relating to Compliance and Enforcement) to attain a 5-log reduction, which is equal to a 99.999% reduction, of the most resistant microorganism of public health significance; or

(2) labeled, if not treated to yield a 5-log reduction of the most resistant microorganism of public health significance:

(A) as specified under subsection (r) of this section; and

(B) as specified in 21 CFR §101.17(g) with the phrase, “WARNING: This product has not been pasteurized and, therefore, may contain harmful bacteria that can cause serious illness in children, the elderly, and persons with weakened immune systems.”

(o) Temperature and time control.

(1) Frozen food. Stored frozen foods shall be maintained frozen.

(2) Potentially hazardous food, slacking. Frozen potentially hazardous food that is slacked to moderate the temperature shall be held:

(A) under refrigeration that maintains the food temperature at 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(i) of this subsection; or at 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection; or

(B) at any temperature if the food remains frozen.

(3) Thawing. Except as specified in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, potentially hazardous food shall be thawed:

(A) under refrigeration that maintains the food temperature at 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(i) of this subsection; or

**§229.164(o)**

**§229.164(o)**

at 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection; or

(B) completely submerged under running water:

(i) at a water temperature of 21 degrees Celsius (70 degrees Fahrenheit) or below;

(ii) with sufficient water velocity to agitate and float off loose particles in an overflow; and

(iii) for a period of time that does not allow thawed portions of ready-to-eat food to rise above 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(i) of this subsection, or 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection; or

(iv) for a period of time that does not allow thawed portions of a raw animal food requiring cooking as specified in subsection (k)(1)(A) or (B) of this section to be above 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit), or 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection, for more than 4 hours including:

(I) the time the food is exposed to the running water and the time needed for preparation for cooking; or

(II) the time it takes under refrigeration to lower the food temperature to 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(i) of this subsection, or 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection;

(C) as part of a cooking process if the food that is frozen is:

(i) cooked as specified in subsections (k)(1)(A) or (B) or (2) of this section; or

(ii) thawed in a microwave oven and immediately transferred to conventional cooking equipment, with no interruption in the process; or

(D) using any procedure if a portion of frozen ready-to-eat food is thawed and prepared for immediate service in response to an individual consumer's order.

(4) Cooling.

(A) Cooked potentially hazardous food shall be cooled:

(i) within two hours, from 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) to 21 degrees C (70 degrees Fahrenheit); and

(ii) within a total of six hours, from 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) to 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(i) of this subsection, or to 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection.

(B) Potentially hazardous food shall be cooled within four hours to 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less, or to 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B) of this subsection if prepared from ingredients at ambient temperature, such as reconstituted foods and canned tuna.

(C) Except as specified in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, a potentially hazardous food received in compliance with laws allowing a temperature above 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) during shipment from the supplier as specified in subsection (c)(1)(B) of this section, shall be cooled within four hours to 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less, or to 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less as specified in paragraph (6)(B) of this subsection.

(D) Raw shell eggs shall be received as specified under subsection (c)(1)(C) of this section and immediately placed in refrigerated equipment that maintains an ambient air temperature of 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less.

(5) Cooling methods.

(A) Cooling shall be accomplished in accordance with the time and temperature criteria specified under paragraph (4) of this subsection by using one or more of the following methods based on the type of food being cooled:

- (i) placing the food in shallow pans;
- (ii) separating the food into smaller or thinner portions;
- (iii) using rapid cooling equipment;
- (iv) stirring the food in a container placed in an ice water bath;
- (v) using containers that facilitate heat transfer;
- (vi) adding ice as an ingredient; or
- (vii) other effective methods.

§229.164(o)

§229.164(o)

(B) When placed in cooling or cold holding equipment, food containers in which food is being cooled shall be:

(i) arranged in the equipment to provide maximum heat transfer through the container walls; and

(ii) loosely covered, or uncovered if protected from overhead contamination as specified under subsection (i)(1)(A)(ii) of this section, during the cooling period to facilitate heat transfer from the surface of the food.

#3 (6) Potentially hazardous food, hot and cold holding. Except during preparation, cooking, or cooling, or when time is used as the public health control as specified under paragraph (9) of this subsection, and except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, potentially hazardous food shall be maintained:

(A) at 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) or above, except that roasts cooked to a temperature and for a time specified in subsection (k)(1)(B) of this section or reheated as specified in subsection (m)(2)(E) of this section may be held at a temperature of 54 degrees Celsius (130 degrees Fahrenheit) or above; or

#2 (B) at a temperature specified in the following:

(i) 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less; or

(ii) 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less in countertop, under-counter and open-top refrigeration units located in the food preparation area that were in use prior to October 6, 2003, provided the food is date marked as specified in paragraphs (7)-(9) of this subsection.

(C) Shell eggs that have not been treated to destroy all viable Salmonellae shall be stored in refrigerated equipment that maintains an ambient air temperature of 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or less.

(7) Ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food, date marking.

#13 (A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (D)-(F) of this paragraph refrigerated, ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food prepared and held in a food establishment for more than 24 hours shall be clearly marked using calendar dates, days of the week, color-coded marks, or other effective means to indicate the date or day by which the food shall be consumed on the premises, sold, or discarded, based on the temperature and time combinations specified below. The day of preparation shall be counted as Day 1.

(i) 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or less for a maximum of seven days; or

**§229.164(o)**

**§229.164(o)**

#13

(ii) 7 degrees Celsius (45 degrees Fahrenheit) or for a maximum of four days in countertop, under-counter and open-top refrigeration units located in the food preparation area and were in use prior to October 6, 2003, as specified in paragraph (6)(B)(ii) of this subsection.

(B) Except as specified in subparagraphs (D)-(G) of this paragraph, refrigerated, ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food prepared and packaged by a food processing plant shall be clearly marked using calendar dates, days of the week, color-coded marks, or other effective means, at the time the original container is opened in a food establishment and if the food is held for more than 24 hours, to indicate the date or day by which the food shall be consumed on the premises, sold, or discarded, based on the temperature and time combinations specified in subparagraph (A) of this paragraph:

(i) the day the original container is opened in the food establishment shall be counted as Day 1; and

(ii) the day or date marked by the food establishment may not exceed a manufacturer's use-by date if the manufacturer determined the use-by date based on food safety.

(C) A refrigerated, ready-to-eat potentially hazardous food that is frequently rewrapped, such as lunchmeat or a roast, or for which date marking is impractical, such as soft serve mix or milk in a dispensing machine, may be marked as specified in subparagraphs (A) or (B) of this paragraph or by an alternative method acceptable to the regulatory authority.

(D) Alternative date marking systems must receive prior approval from the regulatory authority.

(E) Subparagraph (B) of this paragraph does not apply to the following cheeses that are maintained under refrigeration as specified in paragraph (6)(B) of this subsection:

(i) hard cheeses manufactured as specified in 21 CFR §133.150, and with a moisture content not exceeding 39%, such as cheddar, gruyere, parmesan, reggiano, and romano;

(ii) semisoft cheeses manufactured as specified in 21 CFR §133.187, and with a moisture content of more than 39% but less than 50%, such as blue, edam, gorgonzola, gouda, and monterey jack; or

(iii) pasteurized process cheeses manufactured as specified in 21 CFR §133.169, and labeled as containing an acidifying agent.

**§229.164(o)**

**§229.164(o)**

(F) Subparagraphs (A) and (B) of this paragraph do not apply to individual meal portions served or repackaged for sale from a bulk container upon a consumer's request.

(G) Subparagraph (B) of this paragraph does not apply to the following when the face has been cut, but the remaining portion is whole and intact:

(i) fermented sausages produced in a federally inspected food processing plant that are not labeled "Keep Refrigerated" and which retain the original casing on the product;

(ii) shelf stable, dry, fermented sausages; and

(iii) shelf stable salt-cured products such as prosciutto and Parma (ham) produced in a federally inspected food processing plant that are not labeled "Keep Refrigerated".

(H) Subparagraph (B) of this paragraph does not apply to cultured dairy products as defined in 21 CFR 131, Milk and Cream, such as yogurt, sour cream, and buttermilk, that are maintained under refrigeration as specified in paragraph (6)(B) of this subsection.

(I) Subparagraph (B) of this paragraph does not apply to preserved fish products, such as pickled herring, and dried or salted cod, and other acidified fish products defined in 21 CFR 114, Acidified Foods.

#13 (J) A refrigerated, ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food ingredient or a portion of a refrigerated, ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food that is subsequently combined with additional ingredients or portions of food shall retain the date marking of the earliest-prepared or first-prepared ingredient.

(8) Ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food, disposition.

(A) A food specified in paragraph (7)(A) or (B) of this subsection shall be discarded if it:

(i) exceeds either of the temperature and time combinations specified in paragraph (7)(A) of this subsection, except time that the product is frozen;

(ii) is in a container or package that does not bear a date or day; or

(iii) is appropriately marked with a date or day that exceeds a temperature and time combination as specified in paragraph (7)(A) of this subsection.

(B) Refrigerated, ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food prepared in a food establishment and dispensed through a vending machine with an automatic shutoff control

**§229.164(o)**

**§229.164(p)**

shall be discarded if it exceeds a temperature and time combination as specified in paragraph (7)(A) of this subsection.

#13

(9) Time as a public health control.

(A) Except as specified under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, if time only, rather than time in conjunction with temperature, is used as the public health control for a working supply of potentially hazardous food before cooking, or for ready-to-eat potentially hazardous food that is displayed or held for service for immediate consumption:

(i) the food shall be marked or otherwise identified to indicate the time that is four hours past the point in time when the food is removed from temperature control;

(ii) the food shall be cooked and served, served if ready-to-eat, or discarded, within 4 hours from the point in time when the food is removed from temperature control;

(iii) the food in unmarked containers or packages or marked exceed a four hour limit shall be discarded; and

(iv) written procedures shall be maintained in the food establishment and made available to the regulatory authority upon request, that ensure compliance with:

(I) clauses (i)-(iv) of this subparagraph, and

(II) paragraph (4) of this subsection for food that is prepared, cooked, and refrigerated before time is used as a public health control.

(B) In a food establishment that serves a highly susceptible population, time only, rather than time in conjunction with temperature, may not be used as the public health control for raw eggs.

(p) Specialized processing methods.

(1) Variance requirement. A food establishment shall obtain a variance from the department as specified in §229.171(c)(1) and (2) of this title before:

#13

(A) smoking food as a method of food preservation rather than as a method of flavor enhancement;

(B) curing food;

(C) using food additives or adding components such as vinegar:

**§229.164(p)**

**§229.164(p)**

#13

flavor enhancement; or

(i) as a method of food preservation rather than as a method of

(ii) to render a food so that it is not potentially hazardous;

(D) packaging food using a reduced oxygen packaging method except as specified under paragraph (2) of this subsection where a barrier to Clostridium botulinum in addition to refrigeration exists;

(E) operating a molluscan shellfish life-support system display tank used to store and display shellfish that are offered for human consumption;

(F) custom processing animals that are for personal use as food and not for sale or service in a food establishment;

(G) preparing food by another method that is determined by the regulatory authority to require a variance; or

(H) sprouting seeds or beans in a retail food establishment.

(2) Clostridium botulinum controls, reduced oxygen packaging criteria.

(A) Except for a food establishment that obtains a variance as specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection, a food establishment that packages food using a reduced oxygen packaging method and Clostridium botulinum is identified as a microbiological hazard in the final packaged form shall ensure that there are at least two barriers in place to control the growth and toxin formation of C. botulinum.

(B) A food establishment that packages food using a reduced oxygen packaging method and Clostridium botulinum is identified as a microbiological hazard in the final packaged form shall have a HACCP plan that contains the information specified under §229.171(d)(2)(D) of this title, and that:

(i) identifies the food to be packaged;

(ii) limits the food packaged to a food that does not support the growth of Clostridium botulinum because it complies with one of the following:

(I) has an  $a_w$  of 0.91 or less;

(II) has a pH of 4.6 or less;



**§229.164(p)**

**§229.164(p)**

#13

(III) is a meat or poultry product cured at a food processing plant regulated by the USDA or the department using substances specified in 9 CFR §424.21, Use of food ingredients and sources of radiation, and is received in an intact package; or

(IV) is a food with a high level of competing organisms such as raw meat or raw poultry;

(iii) specifies methods for maintaining food at 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or below;

(iv) describes how the packages shall be prominently and conspicuously labeled on the principal display panel in bold type on a contrasting background, with instructions to:

(I) maintain the food at 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) or below; and

(II) for food held at refrigeration temperatures, discard the food if within 14 calendar days of its packaging it is not served for on-premises consumption, or consumed if served or sold for off-premises consumption;

(v) limits the refrigerated shelf life to no more than 14 calendar days from packaging to consumption, except the time the product is maintained frozen, or the original manufacturer's "sell by" or "use by" date, whichever occurs first;

(vi) includes operational procedures that:

(I) prohibit contacting food with bare hands;

(II) identify a designated area and the method by which:

(-a-) physical barriers or methods of separation of raw foods and ready-to-eat foods minimize cross contamination; and

(-b-) access to the processing equipment is limited to responsible trained personnel familiar with the potential hazards of the operation; and

(III) delineate cleaning and sanitization procedures for food-contact surfaces; and

(vii) describes the training program that ensures that the individual responsible for the reduced oxygen packaging operation understands the:

(I) concepts required for a safe operation;

§229.164(p)

§229.164(r)

#13 (II) equipment and facilities; and  
(III) procedures specified under clause (vi) of this subparagraph and §229.171(d)(2)(D) of this title.

#10 (C) Except for fish that is frozen before, during, and after packaging, a food establishment may not package fish using a reduced oxygen packaging method.

(q) Food identity, accurate representation.

(1) Standards of identity. Packaged food shall comply with standard of identity requirements in 21 CFR 131-169, and 9 CFR 319, Definitions and Standards of Identity or Composition, and the general requirements in 21 CFR 130, Food Standards: General, and 9 CFR 319, Subpart A, General.

(2) Honestly presented.

(A) Food shall be offered for human consumption in a way that does not mislead or misinform the consumer.

(B) Food or color additives, colored overwraps, or lights may not be used to misrepresent the true appearance, color, or quality of a food.

(r) Labeling.

(1) Food labels.

#9 (A) Food packaged in a food establishment, shall be labeled as specified in law, including 21 CFR 101, Food Labeling, 9 CFR 317, Labeling, Marking Devices, and Containers, and 9 CFR 381, Subpart N, Labeling and Containers.

(B) Label information shall include:

(i) the common name of the food, or absent a common name, an adequately descriptive identity statement;

(ii) if made from two or more ingredients, a list of ingredients in descending order of predominance by weight, including a declaration of artificial color or flavor and chemical preservatives, if contained in the food;

(iii) an accurate declaration of the quantity of contents;

(iv) the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor;

**§229.164(r)**

**§229.164(r)**

#9

(v) except as exempted in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act §403(Q)(3)-(5), nutrition labeling as specified in 21 CFR 101, Food Labeling, and 9 CFR 317, Subpart B, Nutrition Labeling; and

(vi) for any salmonid fish containing canthaxanthin as a color additive, the labeling of the bulk fish container, including a list of ingredients, displayed on the retail container or by other written means, such as a counter card, that discloses the use of canthaxanthin.

(C) Bulk food that is available for consumer self-dispensing shall be prominently labeled with the following information in plain view of the consumer:

(i) the manufacturer's or processor's label that was provided with the food; or

(ii) a card, sign, or other method of notification that includes the information specified under subparagraph (B)(i), (ii), and (v) of this paragraph.

(D) Bulk, unpackaged foods such as bakery products and unpackaged foods that are portioned to consumer specification need not be labeled if:

(i) a health, nutrient content, or other claim is not made;

(ii) the food is manufactured or prepared on the premises of the food establishment or at another food establishment or a food processing plant that is owned by the same person and is regulated by the food regulatory agency that has jurisdiction; and

(iii) ingredients contained in the food, including potential allergens, are provided to the consumer on request from a recipe book or by other means.

(E) Menu claims.

(i) If a nutrient content claim or health claim is made, such claims shall conform to the definitions of such terms found in 21 CFR 101.

(ii) Claims must be capable of being substantiated. Substantiation may be based upon a recipe for the food, or a database developed and tested nationally and acceptable to the regulatory authority. Evidence of substantiation must be supplied to the regulatory authority upon request.

(iii) Nutritional information must be available to the consumer upon request for any food for which a nutrient content claim or health claim is made.

(2) Other forms of information.

**§229.164(r)**

**§229.164(t)**

(A) If required by law, consumer warnings shall be provided.

(B) Food establishment or manufacturers' dating information on foods may not be concealed or altered.

(s) Consumer advisory.

#26

(1) Except as specified in subsection (k)(1)(C) of this section and under subsection (u)(3) of this section, if an animal food such as beef, eggs, fish, lamb, milk, pork, poultry, or shellfish is served or sold raw, undercooked, or without otherwise being processed to eliminate pathogens, either in ready-to-eat form or as an ingredient in another ready-to-eat food, the permit holder shall inform consumers of the significantly increased risk of consuming such foods by way of a disclosure and reminder, as specified in paragraphs (2) and (3) of this subsection, using brochures, deli case or menu advisories, label statements, table tents, placards, or other effective written means.

(2) Disclosure shall include:

(A) a description of the animal-derived foods, such as “oysters on the half shell (raw oysters),” “raw-egg Caesar salad,” and “hamburgers (can be cooked to order);” or

(B) identification of the animal-derived foods by asterisking them to a footnote that states that the items are served raw or undercooked, or contain (or may contain) raw or undercooked ingredients.

(3) Reminder shall include asterisking the animal-derived foods requiring disclosure to a footnote that states:

(A) regarding the safety of these items, written information is available upon request;

(B) consuming raw or undercooked meats, poultry, seafood, shellfish, or eggs may increase your risk of foodborne illness; or

(C) consuming raw or undercooked meats, poultry, seafood, shellfish, or eggs may increase your risk of foodborne illness, especially if you have certain medical conditions

(t) Disposition, contaminated food.

#10

(1) A food that is unsafe, adulterated, or not honestly presented as specified under subsection (a) of this section shall be reconditioned according to an approved procedure or discarded.

**§229.164(t)**

**§229.164(u)**

(2) Food that is not from an approved source as specified under subsection (b)(1)-(7) of this section shall be discarded.

#9

(3) Ready-to-eat food that may have been contaminated by an employee who has been restricted or excluded as specified under §229.163(d)(2) of this title (relating to Management and Personnel) shall be discarded.

#12

(4) Food that is contaminated by food employees, consumers, or other persons through contact with their hands, bodily discharges, such as nasal or oral discharges, or other means shall be discarded.

(u) Additional safeguards, requirements for food establishments serving highly susceptible populations. Pasteurized foods and prohibited food. In a food establishment that serves a highly susceptible population:

(1) the following criteria shall apply to juice:

#9

(A) for the purposes of this paragraph only, children who are age nine or less and receive food in a school, day care setting or similar facility that provides custodial care are included as highly susceptible populations;

(B) prepackaged juice or a prepackaged beverage containing juice, that bears a warning label as specified in 21 CFR §101.17(g), Food Labeling, or packaged juice or beverage containing juice, that bears a warning label as specified under subsection (n)(2) of this section may not be served or offered for sale; and

(C) unpackaged juice that is prepared on the premises for service or sale in a ready-to-eat form shall be processed under a HACCP plan that contains the information specified in §229.171(d)(2)(B)-(E) of this title, and as specified under 21 CFR 120, Hazard Analysis And Critical Control Point (HACCP) Systems, §120.24, Process Controls;

(2) pasteurized shell eggs or pasteurized liquid, frozen, or dry eggs or egg products shall be substituted for raw shell eggs in the preparation of:

(A) foods such as Caesar salad, hollandaise or béarnaise sauce, mayonnaise, eggnog, ice cream, and egg-fortified beverages; and

(B) except as specified in paragraph (5) of this subsection, recipes in which more than one egg is broken and the eggs are combined;

(3) the following foods may not be served or offered for sale in a ready-to-eat form:

#4

**§229.164(u)**

**§229.164(u)**

#4 (A) raw animal foods such as raw fish, raw-marinated fish, raw molluscan shellfish, and steak tartare;

(B) a partially cooked animal food such as lightly cooked fish, rare meat, soft-cooked eggs that are made from raw shell eggs, and meringue; and

(C) raw seed sprouts;

#11 (4) food employees may not contact ready-to-eat food as specified under subsection (e)(1)(B) and (D) of this section;

#13 (5) time only, as the public health control as specified under subsection (o)(9)(B) of this section, may not be used for raw eggs;

(6) paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection does not apply if:

(A) the raw eggs are combined immediately before cooking for one consumer's serving at a single meal, cooked as specified under subsection (k)(1)(A)(i) of this section, and served immediately, such as an omelet, soufflé, or scrambled eggs;

(B) the raw eggs are combined as an ingredient immediately before baking and the eggs are thoroughly cooked to a ready-to-eat form, such as a cake, muffin, or bread; or

(C) the preparation of the food is conducted under a HACCP plan that:

(i) identifies the food to be prepared;

(ii) prohibits contacting ready-to-eat food with bare hands;

(iii) includes specifications and practices that ensure:

(I) Salmonella Enteritidis growth is controlled before and after cooking; and

(II) Salmonella Enteritidis is destroyed by cooking the eggs according to the temperature and time specified in subsection (k)(1)(A)(ii) of this section;

(iv) contains the information specified under §229.171(d)(2)(D) of this title (relating to Compliance and Enforcement) including procedures that:

(I) control cross contamination of ready-to-eat food with raw eggs; and

**§229.164(u)**

**§229.164(v)**

(II) delineate cleaning and sanitization procedures for food-contact surfaces; and

(v) describes the training program that ensures that the food employee responsible for the preparation of the food understands the procedures to be used;

(7) except as specified in paragraph (8) of this subsection, food may be re-served as specified under subsection (j)(4)(B)(i) and (ii) of this section; and

(8) food may not be re-served under the following conditions:

**#10**

(A) any food served to patients or clients who are under contact precautions in medical isolation or quarantine, protective environmental isolation may not be reserved to others outside; and

(B) packages of food from any patients, client, or other consumers should not be re-served to persons in protective environment isolation.

(v) Donation of foods.

(1) Previous service. Foods which have been previously served to a consumer may not be donated.

**#10**

(2) Potentially hazardous foods. A potentially hazardous food may be donated if:

(A) the food has been kept at or above 57 degrees Celsius (135 degree Fahrenheit) during hot holding and service, and subsequently refrigerated to meet the time and temperature requirements under subsection (o)(4) and (5) of this section;

**#1, #3**

(B) the donor can substantiate that the food recipient has the facilities to meet the transportation, storage, and reheating requirements of these rules;

**#15**

(C) the temperature of the food is at or below 5 degrees Celsius (41 degrees Fahrenheit) at the time of donation, and is protected from contamination; and

**#2, #12**

(D) if the food is to be transported by the recipient directly to a consumer, the recipient need meet only the transportation requirements, including holding temperatures, under these rules.

**#2, #3,  
#15**

(3) Labeling. Donated foods shall be labeled with the name of the food, the source of the food, and the date of preparation.

**#9**

(4) Shelf life. Donated potentially hazardous foods may not exceed the shelf life for leftover foods outlined in these rules.

**#10, #13**

§229.164(v)

§229.164(v)

#10

(5) Damaged foods. Heavily rim or seam-dented canned foods, or packaged foods without the manufacturer's complete labeling, shall not be donated.

(6) Distressed foods. Foods which are considered distressed, such as foods which have been subjected to fire, flooding, excessive heat, smoke, radiation, other environmental contamination, or prolonged storage shall not be directly donated for consumption by the consumer. Such foods may be sold or donated to a licensed food salvage establishment if permitted under the provisions of the Health and Safety Code, Chapter 432.



§229.165. Equipment, Utensils, and Linens.

(a) Multiuse materials.

(1) Characteristics. Materials that are used in the construction of utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment may not allow the migration of deleterious substances or impart colors, odors, or tastes to food and under normal use conditions shall be:

#25

(A) safe;

(B) durable, corrosion-resistant, and nonabsorbent;

(C) sufficient in weight and thickness to withstand repeated warewashing;

(D) finished to have a smooth, easily cleanable surface; and

(E) resistant to pitting, chipping, crazing, scratching, scoring, distortion, and decomposition.

(2) Cast iron, use limitation.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph, cast iron may not be used for utensils or food-contact surfaces of equipment.

(B) Cast iron may be used as a surface for cooking.

(C) Cast iron may be used in utensils for serving food if the utensils are used only as part of an uninterrupted process from cooking through service.

(3) Lead in ceramic, china, and crystal utensils, use limitation. Ceramic, china, crystal utensils, and decorative utensils such as hand-painted ceramic or china that are used in contact with food shall be lead-free or contain levels of lead not exceeding the limits in the following table:

Figure: 25 TAC §229.165(a)(3)

Utensil Category	Description	Maximum Lead mg/L
Hot Beverage Mugs	Coffee Mugs	0.5
Large Hollowware	Bowls greater than or equal to 1.1 L (1.16 QT)	1
Small Hollowware	Bowls < 1.1 L (1.16 QT)	2.0
Flat Utensils	Plates, Saucers	3.0

(4) Copper, use limitation.

#25

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, copper and copper alloys such as brass may not be used in contact with a food that has a pH below 6 such as vinegar, fruit juice, or wine or for a fitting or tubing installed between a backflow prevention device and a carbonator.

(B) Copper and copper alloys may be used in contact with beer brewing ingredients that have a pH below 6 in the prefermentation and fermentation steps of a beer brewing operation such as a brewpub or microbrewery.

(5) Galvanized metal, use limitation. Galvanized metal may not be used for utensils or food-contact surfaces of equipment that are used in contact with acidic food.

(6) Sponges, use limitation. Sponges may not be used in contact with cleaned and sanitized or in-use food-contact surfaces.

(7) Lead in pewter alloys, use limitation. Pewter alloys containing lead in excess of 0.05% may not be used as a food-contact surface.

(8) Lead in solder and flux, use limitation. Solder and flux containing lead in excess of 0.2% may not be used as a food-contact surface.

(9) Wood, use limitation.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B)-(D) of this paragraph, wood and wood wicker may not be used as a food-contact surface.

(B) Hard maple or an equivalently hard, close-grained wood may be used for:

**§229.165(a)**

**§229.165(c)**

(i) cutting boards; cutting blocks; bakers' tables; and utensils such as rolling pins, doughnut dowels, salad bowls, and chopsticks; and

(ii) wooden paddles used in confectionery operations for pressure scraping kettles when manually preparing confections at a temperature of 110 degrees Celsius (230 degrees Fahrenheit) or above.

(C) Whole, uncut, raw fruits and vegetables, and nuts in the shell may be kept in the wood shipping containers in which they were received, until the fruits, vegetables, or nuts are used.

(D) If the nature of the food requires removal of rinds, peels, husks, or shells before consumption, the whole, uncut, raw food may be kept in:

(i) untreated wood containers; or

(ii) treated wood containers if the containers are treated with a preservative that meets the requirements specified in 21 CFR §178.3800, Preservatives for Wood.

(10) Nonstick coatings, use limitation. Multiuse kitchenware such as frying pans, griddles, sauce pans, cookie sheets, and waffle bakers that have a perfluorocarbon resin coating shall be used with nonscoring or nonscratching utensils and cleaning aids.

(11) Nonfood-contact surfaces. Nonfood-contact surfaces of equipment that are exposed to splash, spillage, or other food soiling or that require frequent cleaning shall be constructed of a corrosion-resistant, nonabsorbent, and smooth material.

(b) Single-service and single-use, characteristics. Materials that are used to make single-service and single-use articles:

**#25**

(1) may not:

(A) allow the migration of deleterious substances; or

(B) impart colors, odors, or tastes to food; and

(2) shall be:

(A) safe; and

(B) clean.

(c) Durability and strength.

**§229.165(c)**

**§229.165(d)**

(1) Equipment and utensils. Equipment and utensils shall be designed and constructed to be durable and to retain their characteristic qualities under normal use conditions.

#25

(2) Food temperature measuring devices. Food temperature measuring device may not have sensors or stems constructed of glass, except that thermometers with glass sensors or stems that are encased in a shatterproof coating such as candy thermometers may be used.

(d) Cleanability.

#25

(1) Food-contact surfaces. Multiuse food-contact surfaces shall be:

(A) smooth;

(B) free of breaks, open seams, cracks, chips, inclusions, pits, and similar imperfections;

(C) free of sharp internal angles, corners, and crevices;

(D) finished to have smooth welds and joints; and

(E) except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, accessible for cleaning and inspection by one of the following methods:

(i) without being disassembled;

(ii) by disassembling without the use of tools; or

(iii) by easy disassembling with the use of handheld tools commonly available to maintenance and cleaning personnel such as screwdrivers, pliers, and wrenches.

(2) Paragraph (5) of this subsection does not apply to cooking oil storage tanks, distribution lines for cooking oils, or beverage syrup lines or tubes.

(3) Cleaned in place (CIP) equipment.

(A) CIP equipment shall meet the characteristics specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection and shall be designed and constructed so that:

(i) cleaning and sanitizing solutions circulate throughout a fixed system and contact all interior food-contact surfaces; and

(ii) the system is self-draining or capable of being completely drained of cleaning and sanitizing solutions; and

**§229.165(d)**

**§229.165(e)**

(B) CIP equipment that is not designed to be disassembled for cleaning shall be designed with inspection access points to ensure that all interior food-contact surfaces throughout the fixed system are being effectively cleaned.

(4) “V” threads, use limitation. Except for hot oil cooking or filtering equipment, “V” type threads may not be used on food-contact surfaces.

(5) Hot oil filtering equipment. Hot oil filtering equipment shall meet the characteristics specified under paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection and shall be readily accessible for filter replacement and cleaning of the filter.

(6) Can openers. Cutting or piercing parts of can openers shall be readily removable for cleaning and for replacement.

(7) Nonfood-contact surfaces. Nonfood-contact surfaces shall be free of unnecessary ledges, projections, and crevices, and designed and constructed to allow easy cleaning and to facilitate maintenance.

(8) Kick plates, removable. Kick plates shall be designed so that the areas behind them are accessible for inspection and cleaning by being:

(A) removable by one of the methods specified under paragraph (1)(E) of this subsection or capable of being rotated open; and

(B) removable or capable of being rotated open without unlocking equipment doors.

(9) Ventilation hood systems, filters. Filters or other grease extracting equipment shall be designed to be readily removable for cleaning and replacement if not designed to be cleaned in place.

(e) Accuracy of temperature measuring devices, food.

(1) Temperature measuring device, food.

(A) Food temperature measuring device that are scaled only in Celsius or dually scaled in Celsius and Fahrenheit shall be accurate to  $\pm 1$  degrees Celsius in the intended range of use.

#24

(B) Food temperature measuring device that are scaled only in Fahrenheit shall be accurate to  $\pm 2$  degrees Fahrenheit in the intended range of use.

(2) Temperature measuring devices, ambient air and water.

**§229.165(e)**

**§229.165(f)**

(A) Ambient air and water temperature measuring device that are scaled in Celsius or dually scaled in Celsius and Fahrenheit shall be designed to be easily readable and accurate to  $\pm 1.5$  degrees Celsius in the intended range of use.

(B) Ambient air and water temperature measuring device that are scaled only in Fahrenheit shall be accurate to  $\pm 3$  degrees Fahrenheit in the intended range of use.

(3) Pressure measuring devices, mechanical warewashing equipment. Pressure measuring devices that display the pressures in the water supply line for the fresh hot water sanitizing rinse shall have increments of 7 kilopascals (1 pounds per square inch) or smaller and shall be accurate to  $\pm 14$  kilopascals ( $\pm 2$  pounds per square inch) in the 100-170 kilopascals (15-25 pounds per square inch) range.

(f) Functionality of equipment.

(1) Ventilation hood systems, drip prevention. Exhaust ventilation hood systems in food preparation and warewashing areas including components such as hoods, fans, guards, and ducting shall be designed to prevent grease or condensation from draining or dripping onto food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

(2) Equipment openings, closures and deflectors.

(A) A cover or lid for equipment shall overlap the opening and be sloped to drain.

(B) An opening located within the top of a unit of equipment that is designed for use with a cover or lid shall be flanged upward at least 5 millimeters (two-tenths of an inch).

(C) Except as specified under subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, fixed piping, temperature measuring device, rotary shafts, and other parts extending into equipment shall be provided with a watertight joint at the point where the item enters the equipment.

(D) If a watertight joint is not provided:

(i) the piping, temperature measuring device, rotary shafts, and other parts extending through the openings shall be equipped with an apron designed to deflect condensation, drips, and dust from openings into the food; and

(ii) the opening shall be flanged as specified under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph.

(3) Dispensing equipment, protection of equipment and food. In equipment that dispenses or vends liquid food or ice in unpackaged form:

**§229.165(f)**

**§229.165(f)**

(A) the delivery tube, chute, orifice, and splash surfaces directly above the container receiving the food shall be designed in a manner, such as with barriers, baffles, or drip aprons, so that drips from condensation and splash are diverted from the opening of the container receiving the food;

(B) the delivery tube, chute, and orifice shall be protected from manual contact such as by being recessed;

(C) the delivery tube or chute and orifice of equipment used to vend liquid food or ice in unpackage form to self-service consumers shall be designed so that the delivery tube or chute and orifice are protected from dust, insects, rodents, and other contamination by a self-closing door if the equipment is:

(i) located in an outside area that does not otherwise afford the protection of an enclosure against the rain, windblown debris, insects, rodents, and other contaminants that are present in the environment; or

(ii) available for self-service during hours when it is not under the full-time supervision of a food employee; and

(D) the dispensing equipment actuating lever or mechanism and filling device of consumer self-service beverage dispensing equipment shall be designed to prevent contact with the lip-contact surface of glasses or cups that are refilled.

(4) Vending machine, vending stage closure. The dispensing compartment of a vending machine including a machine that is designed to vend prepackaged snack food that is not potentially hazardous such as chips, party mixes, and pretzels shall be equipped with a self-closing door or cover if the machine is:

(A) located in an outside area that does not otherwise afford the protection of an enclosure against the rain, windblown debris, insects, rodents, and other contaminants that are present in the environment; or

(B) available for self-service during hours when it is not under the full-time supervision of a food employee.

(5) Bearings and gear boxes, leakproof. Equipment containing bearings and gears that require lubricants shall be designed and constructed so that the lubricant can not leak, drip, or be forced into food or onto food-contact surfaces.

(6) Beverage tubing, separation. Beverage tubing and cold-plate beverage cooling devices may not be installed in contact with stored ice. This section does not apply to cold plates that are constructed integrally with an ice storage bin.

**§229.165(f)**

**§229.165(f)**

(7) Ice units, separation of drains. Liquid waste drain lines may not pass through an ice machine or ice storage bin.

(8) Condenser unit, separation. If a condenser unit is an integral component of equipment, the condenser unit shall be separated from the food and food storage space by a dustproof barrier.

(9) Can openers on vending machines. Cutting or piercing parts of can openers on vending machines shall be protected from manual contact, dust, insects, rodents, and other contamination.

(10) Molluscan shellfish tanks.

(A) Except as specified under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, molluscan shellfish life support system display tanks may not be used to display shellfish that are offered for human consumption and shall be conspicuously marked so that it is obvious to the consumer that the shellfish are for display only.

#13

(B) Molluscan shellfish life-support system display tanks that are used to store and display shellfish that are offered for human consumption shall be operated and maintained in accordance with a HACCP plan that:

(i) is submitted by the permit holder and approved by the regulatory authority as specified under §229.171(c) of this title (relating to Compliance and Enforcement); and

(ii) ensures that:

(I) water used with fish other than molluscan shellfish does not flow into the molluscan tank;

(II) the safety and quality of the shellfish as they were received are not compromised by the use of the tank; and

(III) the identity of the source of the shellstock is retained as specified under §229.164(d)(5) of this title (relating to Food), and the source information is displayed with the shellstock as required in §229.164(c)(8) of this title.

(11) Vending machines, automatic shutoff.

#15

(A) A machine vending potentially hazardous food shall have an automatic control that prevents the machine from vending food:



**§229.165(f)**

**§229.165(f)**

(i) if there is a power failure, mechanical failure, or other condition that results in an internal machine temperature that can not maintain food temperatures as specified under §229.164 of this title; and

#15

(ii) if a condition specified under clause (i) of this subparagraph occurs, until the machine is serviced and restocked with food that has been maintained at temperatures specified under Chapter 3.

(B) When the automatic shutoff within a machine vending potentially hazardous food is activated:

(i) in a refrigerated vending machine, the ambient temperature may not exceed any time/temperature combination as specified under §229.164(o)(6)(B) of this title for more than 30 minutes immediately after the machine is filled, serviced, or restocked; or

(ii) in a hot holding vending machine, the ambient temperature may not be less than 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) for more than 120 minutes immediately after the machine is filled, serviced, or restocked.

(12) Temperature measuring devices.

(A) In a mechanically refrigerated or hot food storage unit, the sensor of a temperature measuring device shall be located to measure the air temperature or a simulated product temperature in the warmest part of a mechanically refrigerated unit and in the coolest part of a hot food storage unit.

(B) Except as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, cold or hot holding equipment used for potentially hazardous food shall be designed to include and shall be equipped with at least one integral or permanently affixed temperature measuring device that is located to allow easy viewing of the device's temperature display.

#24

(C) Subparagraph (B) of this paragraph does not apply to equipment for which the placement of a temperature measuring device is not a practical means for measuring the ambient air surrounding the food because of the design, type, and use of the equipment, such as calrod units, heat lamps, cold plates, bainmaries, steam tables, insulated food transport containers, and salad bars.

(D) Temperature measuring devices shall be designed to be easily readable.

(E) Food temperature measuring device and water temperature measuring device on warewashing machines shall have a numerical scale, printed record, or digital readout in increments no greater than 1 degrees Celsius or 2 degrees Fahrenheit in the intended range of use.

**§229.165(f)**

**§229.165(f)**

(13) Warewashing machine, data plate operating specifications. A warewashing machine shall be provided with an easily accessible and readable data plate affixed to the machine by the manufacturer that indicates the machine's design and operating specifications including the:

(A) temperatures required for washing, rinsing, and sanitizing;

(B) pressure required for the fresh water sanitizing rinse unless the machine is designed to use only a pumped sanitizing rinse; and

(C) conveyor speed for conveyor machines or cycle time for stationary rack machines.

(14) Warewashing machines, internal baffles. Warewashing machine wash and rinse tanks shall be equipped with baffles, curtains, or other means to minimize internal cross contamination of the solutions in wash and rinse tanks.

(15) Warewashing machines, temperature measuring devices. A warewashing machine shall be equipped with a temperature measuring device that indicates the temperature of the water:

(A) in each wash and rinse tank; and

(B) as the water enters the hot water sanitizing final rinse manifold or in the chemical sanitizing solution tank.

(16) Manual warewashing equipment, heaters and baskets. If hot water is used for sanitization in manual warewashing operations, the sanitizing compartment of the sink shall be:

(A) designed with an integral heating device that is capable of maintaining water at a temperature not less than 77 degrees Celsius (171 degrees Fahrenheit ); and

(B) provided with a rack or basket to allow complete immersion of equipment and utensils into the hot water.

(17) Warewashing machines, automatic dispensing of detergents and sanitizers. A warewashing machine that is installed after adoption of these rules by the regulatory authority, shall be equipped to:

(A) automatically dispense detergents and sanitizers; and

**§229.165(f)**

**§229.165(f)**

(B) incorporate a visual means to verify that detergents and sanitizers are delivered or a visual or audible alarm to signal if the detergents and sanitizers are not delivered to the respective washing and sanitizing cycles.

(18) Warewashing machines, flow pressure device.

(A) Warewashing machines that provide a fresh hot water sanitizing rinse shall be equipped with a pressure gauge or similar device such as a transducer that measures and displays the water pressure in the supply line immediately before entering the warewashing machine.

(B) If the flow pressure measuring device is upstream of the fresh hot water sanitizing rinse control valve, the device shall be mounted in a 6.4 millimeter or one-fourth inch Iron Pipe Size (IPS) valve.

(C) Subparagraphs (A) and (B) of this paragraph do not apply to a machine that uses only a pumped or recirculated sanitizing rinse.

(19) Warewashing sinks and drainboards, self-draining. Sinks and drainboards of warewashing sinks and machines shall be self-draining.

(20) Equipment compartments, drainage. Equipment compartments that are subject to accumulation of moisture due to conditions such as condensation, food or beverage drip, or water from melting ice shall be sloped to an outlet that allows complete draining.

(21) Vending machines, liquid waste products.

(A) Vending machines designed to store beverages that are packaged in containers made from paper products shall be equipped with diversion devices and retention pans or drains for container leakage.

(B) Vending machines that dispense liquid food in bulk shall be:

(i) provided with an internally mounted waste receptacle for the collection of drip, spillage, overflow, or other internal wastes; and

(ii) equipped with an automatic shutoff device that will place the machine out of operation before the waste receptacle overflows.

(C) Shutoff devices specified under subparagraph (B)(ii) of this paragraph shall prevent water or liquid food from continuously running if there is a failure of a flow control device in the water or liquid food system or waste accumulation that could lead to overflow of the waste receptacle.

**§229.165(f)**

**§229.165(g)**

(22) Case lot handling equipment, moveability. Equipment, such as dollies, pallets, racks, and skids used to store and transport large quantities of packaged foods received from a supplier in a cased or overwrapped lot, shall be designed to be moved by hand or by conveniently available equipment such as hand trucks and forklifts.

(23) Vending machine doors and openings.

(A) Vending machine doors and access opening covers to food and container storage spaces shall be tight-fitting so that the space along the entire interface between the doors or covers and the cabinet of the machine, if the doors or covers are in a closed position, is no greater than 1.5 millimeters or one-sixteenth inch by:

(i) being covered with louvers, screens, or materials that provide an equivalent opening of not greater than 1.5 millimeters or one-sixteenth inch. Screening of 12 or more mesh to 2.5 centimeters (12 mesh to 1 inch) meets this requirement;

(ii) being effectively gasketed;

(iii) having interface surfaces that are at least 13 millimeters or one-half inch wide; or

(iv) jambs or surfaces used to form an L-shaped entry path to the interface.

(B) Vending machine service connection openings through an exterior wall of a machine shall be closed by sealants, clamps, or grommets so that the openings are no larger than 1.5 millimeters or one-sixteenth inch.

(24) Food equipment certification, classification, acceptability. Food equipment that is certified or classified for sanitation by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited certification program will be deemed to comply with subsections (a)-(f) of this section.

(g) Equipment, numbers and capacities.

**#15** (1) Cooling, heating, and holding capacities. Equipment for cooling and heating food, and holding cold and hot food, shall be sufficient in number and capacity to provide food temperatures as specified under §229.164 of this title.

(2) Manual warewashing, sink compartment requirements.

**#21** (A) Except as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, a sink with at least three compartments shall be provided for manually washing, rinsing, and sanitizing equipment and utensils.

**§229.165(g)**

**§229.165(g)**

(B) Sink compartments shall be large enough to accommodate immersion of the largest equipment and utensils. If equipment or utensils are too large for the warewashing sink, a warewashing machine or alternative equipment as specified in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph shall be used.

(C) Alternative manual warewashing equipment may be used when there are special cleaning needs or constraints and its use is approved. Alternative manual warewashing equipment may include:

- (i) high-pressure detergent sprayers;
- (ii) low- or line-pressure spray detergent foamers;
- (iii) other task-specific cleaning equipment;
- (iv) brushes or other implements;
- (v) two-compartment sinks as specified under subparagraphs (D) and (E) of this paragraph; or
- (vi) receptacles that substitute for the compartments of a multicompartment sink.

(D) Before a two-compartment sink is used:

- (i) it must be approved by the regulatory authority; and
- (ii) the permit holder shall limit the number of kitchenware items cleaned and sanitized in the two-compartment sink, and shall limit warewashing to batch operations for cleaning kitchenware such as between cutting one type of raw meat and another or cleanup at the end of a shift, and shall:
  - (I) make up the cleaning and sanitizing solutions immediately before use and drain them immediately after use; and
  - (II) use a detergent-sanitizer to sanitize and apply the detergent-sanitizer in accordance with the manufacturer's label instructions and as specified under subsection (k)(15) of this section; or
  - (III) use a hot water sanitization immersion step as specified under subsection (o)(6)(C) of this section.

§229.165(g)

§229.165(i)

#21

(E) A two-compartment sink may not be used for warewashing operations where cleaning and sanitizing solutions are used for a continuous or intermittent flow of kitchenware or tableware in an ongoing warewashing process.

(3) Drainboards. Drainboards, utensil racks, or tables large enough to accommodate all soiled and cleaned items that may accumulate during hours of operation shall be provided for necessary utensil holding before cleaning and after sanitizing.

(4) Ventilation hood systems, adequacy. Ventilation hood systems and devices shall be sufficient in number and capacity to prevent grease or condensation from collecting on walls and ceilings.

(5) Clothes washers and dryers.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, if work clothes or linens are laundered on the premises, a mechanical clothes washer and dryer shall be provided and used.

(B) If on-premises laundering is limited to wiping cloths intended to be used moist, or wiping cloths are air-dried as specified under subsection (n)(2) of this section, a mechanical clothes washer and dryer need not be provided.

(h) Utensils, temperature measuring devices, and testing devices.

(1) Utensils, consumer self-service. A food dispensing utensil shall be available for each container displayed at a consumer self-service unit such as a buffet or salad bar.

#24

(2) Food temperature measuring devices. Food temperature measuring device shall be provided and readily accessible for use in ensuring attainment and maintenance of food temperatures as specified under §229.164 of this title.

(3) A temperature measuring device with a suitable small-diameter probe that is designed to measure the temperature of thin masses shall be provided and readily accessible to accurately measure the temperature in thin foods such as meat patties and fish filets.

(4) Temperature measuring devices, manual warewashing. In manual warewashing operations, a temperature measuring device shall be provided and readily accessible for frequently measuring the washing and sanitizing temperatures.

(5) Sanitizing solutions, testing devices. A test kit or other device that accurately measures the concentration in mg/L of sanitizing solutions shall be provided.

(i) Location of equipment, clothes washers and dryers, and storage cabinets.

**§229.165(i)**

**§229.165(j)**

(1) Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection, equipment, a cabinet used for the storage of food, or a cabinet that is used to store cleaned and sanitized equipment, utensils, laundered linens, and single-service and single-use articles may not be located:

- (A) in locker rooms;
- (B) in toilet rooms;
- (C) in garbage rooms;
- (D) in mechanical rooms;
- (E) under sewer lines that are not shielded to intercept potential drips;
- (F) under leaking water lines including leaking automatic fire sprinkler heads or under lines on which water has condensed;
- (G) under open stairwells; or
- (H) under other sources of contamination.

(2) Linen, single-service, single-use item exception. A storage cabinet used for linens or single-service or single-use articles may be stored in a locker room.

(3) Clothes washer and dryer location requirements. If a mechanical clothes washer or dryer is provided, it shall be located so that the washer or dryer is protected from contamination and only where there is no exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.

(j) Installation, fixed equipment.

(1) Fixed equipment, spacing or sealing.

(A) Equipment that is fixed because it is not easily movable shall be installed so that it is:

(i) spaced to allow access for cleaning along the sides, behind, and above the equipment;

(ii) spaced from adjoining equipment, walls, and ceilings a distance of not more than one millimeter or one thirty-second inch; or

(iii) sealed to adjoining equipment or walls, if the equipment is exposed to spillage or seepage.

**§229.165(j)**

**§229.165(k)**

(B) Table-mounted equipment that is not easily movable shall be installed to allow cleaning of the equipment and areas underneath and around the equipment by being:

(i) sealed to the table; or

(ii) elevated on legs as specified under paragraph (2)(D) of this subsection.

(2) Fixed equipment, elevation or sealing.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph, floor-mounted equipment that is not easily movable shall be sealed to the floor or elevated on legs that provide at least a 15-centimeter (6-inch) clearance between the floor and the equipment.

(B) If no part of the floor under the floor-mounted equipment is more than 15 centimeters (6 inches) from the point of cleaning access, the clearance space may be only 10 centimeters (4 inches).

(C) This section does not apply to display shelving units, display refrigeration units, and display freezer units located in the consumer shopping areas of a retail food store, if the floor under the units is maintained clean.

(D) Except as specified in subparagraph (E) of this paragraph, table-mounted equipment that is not easily movable shall be elevated on legs that provide at least a 10-centimeter (4-inch) clearance between the table and the equipment.

(E) The clearance space between the table and table-mounted equipment may be:

(i) 7.5 centimeters (3 inches) if the horizontal distance of the table top under the equipment is no more than 50 centimeters (20 inches) from the point of access for cleaning; or

(ii) 5 centimeters (2 inches) if the horizontal distance of the table top under the equipment is no more than 7.5 centimeters (3 inches) from the point of access for cleaning.

(k) Equipment, maintenance and operation.

(1) Good repair and proper adjustment.

(A) Equipment shall be maintained in a state of repair and condition that meets the requirements specified under subsections (a) and (b) of this section.



**§229.165(k)**

**§229.165(k)**

(B) Equipment components such as doors, seals, hinges, fasteners, and kick plates shall be kept intact, tight, and adjusted in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

(C) Cutting or piercing parts of can openers shall be kept sharp to minimize the creation of metal fragments that can contaminate food when the container is opened.

(2) Cutting surfaces. Surfaces such as cutting blocks and boards that are subject to scratching and scoring shall be resurfaced if they can no longer be effectively cleaned and sanitized, or discarded if they are not capable of being resurfaced.

(3) Microwave ovens. Microwave ovens shall meet the safety standards specified in 21 CFR §1030.10, Microwave Ovens.

(4) Warewashing equipment, cleaning frequency. A warewashing machine; the compartments of sinks, basins, or other receptacles used for washing and rinsing equipment, utensils, or raw foods, or laundering wiping cloths; and drainboards or other equipment used to substitute for drainboards as specified under subsection (g)(3) of this section shall be cleaned:

(A) before use;

(B) throughout the day at a frequency necessary to prevent recontamination of equipment and utensils and to ensure that the equipment performs its intended function; and

(C) if used, at least every 24 hours.

(5) Warewashing machines, manufacturers' operating instructions.

(A) A warewashing machine and its auxiliary components shall be operated in accordance with the machine's data plate and other manufacturer's instructions.

(B) A warewashing machine's conveyor speed or automatic cycle times shall be maintained accurately timed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

(6) Warewashing sinks, use limitation.

(A) A warewashing sink may not be used for handwashing as specified under §229.163(i) of this title (relating to Management and Personnel) or dumping mop water.

(B) If a warewashing sink is used to wash wiping cloths, wash produce, or thaw food, the sink shall be cleaned as specified under paragraph (4) of this section before and after each time it is used to wash wiping cloths or wash produce or thaw food. Sinks used to

**§229.165(k)**

**§229.165(k)**

wash or thaw food shall be sanitized as specified under subsections (p)-(r) of this section before and after using the sink to wash produce or thaw food.

(7) Warewashing equipment, cleaning agents. When used for warewashing, the wash compartment of a sink, mechanical warewasher, or wash receptacle of alternative manual warewashing equipment as specified in subsection (g)(2)(C) of this section, shall contain a wash solution of soap, detergent, acid cleaner, alkaline cleaner, degreaser, abrasive cleaner, or other cleaning agent according to the cleaning agent manufacturer's label instructions.

(8) Warewashing equipment, clean solutions. The wash, rinse, and sanitize solutions shall be maintained clean.

(9) Manual warewashing equipment, wash solution temperature. The temperature of the wash solution in manual warewashing equipment shall be maintained at not less than 43 degrees Celsius (110 degrees Fahrenheit) or the temperature specified on the cleaning agent manufacturer's label instructions.

(10) Mechanical warewashing equipment, wash solution temperature.

(A) The temperature of the wash solution in spray type warewashers that use hot water to sanitize may not be less than:

(i) for a stationary rack, single temperature machine, 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit );

(ii) for a stationary rack, dual temperature machine, 66 degrees Celsius (150 degrees Fahrenheit );

(iii) for a single tank, conveyor, dual temperature machine, 71 degrees Celsius (160 degrees Fahrenheit ); or

(iv) for a multitank, conveyor, multitemperature machine, 66 degrees Celsius (150 degrees Fahrenheit ).

(B) The temperature of the wash solution in spray-type warewashers that use chemicals to sanitize may not be less than 49 degrees Celsius (120 degrees Fahrenheit ).

**#21** (11) Manual warewashing equipment, hot water sanitization temperatures. If immersion in hot water is used for sanitizing in a manual operation, the temperature of the water shall be maintained at 77 degrees Celsius (171 degrees Fahrenheit ) or above.

(12) Mechanical warewashing equipment, hot water sanitization temperatures.

**§229.165(k)**

**§229.165(k)**

#21

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, in a mechanical operation, the temperature of the fresh hot water sanitizing rinse as it enters the manifold may not be more than 90 degrees Celsius (194 degrees Fahrenheit ), or less than:

(i) for a stationary rack, single temperature machine, 74 degrees Celsius (165 degrees Fahrenheit ); or

(ii) for all other machines, 82 degrees Celsius (180 degrees Fahrenheit ).

(B) The maximum temperature specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, does not apply to the high pressure and temperature systems with wand-type, hand-held, spraying devices used for the in-place cleaning and sanitizing of equipment such as meat saws.

(13) Mechanical warewashing equipment, sanitization pressure. The flow pressure of the fresh hot water sanitizing rinse in a warewashing machine may not be less than 100 kilopascals (15 pounds per square inch) or more than 170 kilopascals (25 pounds per square inch) as measured in the water line immediately downstream or upstream from the fresh hot water sanitizing rinse control valve.

(14) Manual and mechanical warewashing equipment, chemical sanitization temperature, pH, concentration, and hardness. A chemical sanitizer used in a sanitizing solution for a manual or mechanical operation at exposure times specified under subsection (r)(3) of this section shall be listed in 21 CFR §178.1010, Sanitizing Solutions, shall be used in accordance with the EPA-approved manufacturer's label use instructions, and shall be used as follows:

#20 or #21

(A) a chlorine solution shall have a minimum temperature based on the concentration and pH of the solution as listed in the following chart;

Figure: 25 TAC §229.165(k)(14)(A)

Minimum Concentration	Minimum Temperature	
	pH 10 or less °C (°F )	pH 8 or less °C (°F )
mg/L 25	49 (120)	49 (120)
50	38 (100)	24 (75)
100	13 (55)	13 (55)

§229.165(k)

§229.165(l)

#20  
or #21

(B) an iodine solution shall have a:

(i) minimum temperature of 24 degrees Celsius (75 degrees Fahrenheit);

(ii) pH of 5.0 or less or a pH no higher than the level for which the manufacturer specifies the solution is effective; and

(iii) concentration between 12.5 mg/L and 25 mg/L;

(C) a quaternary ammonium compound solution shall:

(i) have a minimum temperature of 24 degrees Celsius (75 degrees Fahrenheit);

(ii) have a concentration as specified under §229.168(f)(1) of this title (relating to Poisonous or Toxic Materials) and as indicated by the manufacturer's use directions included in the labeling; and

(iii) be used only in water with 500 mg/L hardness or less or in water having a hardness no greater than specified by the manufacturer's label;

(D) if another solution of a chemical specified under subparagraphs (A)-(C) of this paragraph is used, the permit holder shall demonstrate to the regulatory authority that the solution achieves sanitization and the use of the solution shall be approved; or

(E) if a chemical sanitizer other than chlorine, iodine, or a quaternary ammonium compound is used, it shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's use directions included in the labeling.

(15) Manual warewashing equipment, chemical sanitization using detergent-sanitizers. If a detergent-sanitizer is used to sanitize in a cleaning and sanitizing procedure where there is no distinct water rinse between the washing and sanitizing steps, the agent applied in the sanitizing step shall be the same detergent-sanitizer that is used in the washing step.

(16) Warewashing equipment, determining chemical sanitizer concentration. Concentration of the sanitizing solution shall be accurately determined by using a test kit or other device.

(l) Utensils and temperature and pressure measuring devices.

(1) Good repair and calibration.

**§229.165(l)**

(A) Utensils shall be maintained in a state of repair or condition that complies with the requirements specified under subsections (a) - (f) of this section or shall be discarded.

**§229.165(n)**

(B) Food temperature measuring device shall be calibrated in accordance with manufacturer's specifications as necessary to ensure their accuracy.

#24

(C) Ambient air temperature, water pressure, and water temperature measuring device shall be maintained in good repair and be accurate within the intended range of use.

(2) Single-service and single-use articles, required use. A food establishment without facilities specified under subsections (m) - (r) of this section for cleaning and sanitizing kitchenware and tableware shall provide only single-use kitchenware, single-service articles, and single-use articles for use by food employees and single-service articles for use by consumers.

#25

(3) Single-service and single-use articles, use limitation.

(A) Single-service and single-use articles may not be reused.

(B) The bulk milk container dispensing tube shall be cut on the diagonal leaving no more than one inch protruding from the chilled dispensing head.

(4) Shells, use limitation. Mollusk and crustacea shells may not be used more than once as serving containers.

(m) Cleaning of equipment and utensils.

(1) Equipment, food-contact surfaces, nonfood-contact surfaces, and utensils.

(A) Equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils shall be clean to sight and touch.

#25

(B) The food-contact surfaces of cooking equipment and pans shall be kept free of encrusted grease deposits and other soil accumulations.

(2) Nonfood-contact surfaces of equipment shall be kept free of an accumulation of dust, dirt, food residue, and other debris.

(n) Frequency of cleaning.

(1) Equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils.

#25

(A) Equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils shall be cleaned:

**§229.165(n)**

**§229.165(n)**

**#25** (i) except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, before each use with a different type of raw animal food such as beef, fish, lamb, pork, or poultry;

(ii) each time there is a change from working with raw foods to working with ready-to-eat foods;

(iii) between uses with raw fruits and vegetables and with potentially hazardous food;

(iv) before using or storing a food temperature measuring device;  
and

(v) at any time during the operation when contamination may have occurred.

(B) Subparagraph (A)(i) of this paragraph does not apply if the food-contact surface or utensil is in contact with a succession of different raw animal foods each requiring a higher cooking temperature as specified under §229.164(k)(1)(A)(iii) of this title than the previous food, such as preparing raw fish followed by cutting raw poultry on the same cutting board.

**#25** (C) Except as specified in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, if used with potentially hazardous food, equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils shall be cleaned throughout the day at least every four hours.

(D) Surfaces of utensils and equipment contacting potentially hazardous food may be cleaned less frequently than every four hours if:

(i) in storage, containers of potentially hazardous food and their contents are maintained at temperatures specified under §229.164 of this title and the containers are cleaned when they are empty;

(ii) utensils and equipment are used to prepare food in a refrigerated room or area that is maintained at one of the temperatures in the following chart and:

(I) the utensils and equipment are cleaned at the frequency in the following chart that corresponds to the temperature; and

Figure: 25 TAC §229.165(n)(1)(D)(ii)(I)

<b>Temperature</b>	<b>Cleaning Frequency</b>
5.0 °C (41 °F ) or less	24 hours
>5.0 °C - 7.2 °C (>41 °F - 45 °F )	20 hours
>7.2 °C - 10.0 °C (>45 °F - 50 °F )	16 hours
>10.0 °C - 12.8 °C (>50 °F - 55 °F )	10 hours

(II) the cleaning frequency based on the ambient temperature of the refrigerated room or area is documented in the food establishment; #25

(iii) containers in serving situations such as salad bars, delis, and cafeteria lines hold ready-to-eat potentially hazardous food that is maintained at the temperatures specified under §229.164 of this title, are intermittently combined with additional supplies of the same food that is at the required temperature, and the containers are cleaned at least every 24 hours;

(iv) temperature measuring devices are maintained in contact with food, such as when left in a container of deli food or in a roast, held at temperatures specified under §229.164 of this title;

(v) equipment is used for storage of packaged or unpackaged food such as a reach-in refrigerator and the equipment is cleaned at a frequency necessary to preclude accumulation of soil residues;

(vi) the cleaning schedule is approved based on consideration of:

(I) the characteristics of the equipment and its use;

(II) the type of food involved;

(III) the amount of food residue accumulation; and

**§229.165(n)**

**§229.165(o)**

#25

(IV) the temperature at which the food is maintained during the operation and the potential for the rapid and progressive multiplication of pathogenic or toxigenic microorganisms that are capable of causing foodborne disease; or

(vii) in-use utensils are intermittently stored in a container of water in which the water is maintained at 57 degrees Celsius (135 degrees Fahrenheit) or more and the utensils and container are cleaned at least every 24 hours or at a frequency necessary to preclude accumulation of soil residues.

(E) Except when dry cleaning methods are used as specified under subsection (o)(1) of this section, surfaces of utensils and equipment contacting food that is not potentially hazardous shall be cleaned:

(i) at any time when contamination may have occurred;

(ii) at least every 24 hours for iced tea dispensers and consumer self-service utensils such as tongs, scoops, or ladles;

(iii) before restocking consumer self-service equipment and utensils such as condiment dispensers and display containers; and

(iv) in equipment such as ice bins and beverage dispensing nozzles and enclosed components of equipment such as ice makers, cooking oil storage tanks and distribution lines, beverage and syrup dispensing lines or tubes, coffee bean grinders, and water vending equipment:

(I) at a frequency specified by the manufacturer; or

(II) absent manufacturer specifications, at a frequency necessary to preclude accumulation of soil or mold.

(2) Cooking and baking equipment.

(A) The food-contact surfaces of cooking and baking equipment shall be cleaned at least every 24 hours. This section does not apply to hot oil cooking and filtering equipment if it is cleaned as specified in paragraph (1)(D)(vi) of this subsection.

(B) The cavities and door seals of microwave ovens shall be cleaned at least every 24 hours by using the manufacturer's recommended cleaning procedure.

(3) Nonfood-contact surfaces. Nonfood-contact surfaces of equipment shall be cleaned at a frequency necessary to preclude accumulation of soil residues.

(o) Methods of cleaning.



**§229.165(o)**

**§229.165(o)**

(1) Dry cleaning.

(A) If used, dry cleaning methods such as brushing, scraping, and vacuuming shall contact only surfaces that are soiled with dry food residues that are not potentially hazardous.

(B) Cleaning equipment used in dry cleaning food-contact surfaces may not be used for any other purpose.

(2) Precleaning.

(A) Food debris on equipment and utensils shall be scrapped over a waste disposal unit or garbage receptacle or shall be removed in a warewashing machine with a prewash cycle.

(B) If necessary for effective cleaning, utensils and equipment shall be preflushed, presoaked, or scrubbed with abrasives.

(3) Loading of soiled items, warewashing machines. Soiled items to be cleaned in a warewashing machine shall be loaded into racks, trays, or baskets or onto conveyors in a position that:

(A) exposes the items to the unobstructed spray from all cycles; and

(B) allows the items to drain.

(4) Wet cleaning.

(A) Equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils shall be effectively washed to remove or completely loosen soils by using the manual or mechanical means necessary such as the application of detergents containing wetting agents and emulsifiers; acid, alkaline, or abrasive cleaners; hot water; brushes; scouring pads; high-pressure sprays; or ultrasonic devices.

(B) The washing procedures selected shall be based on the type and purpose of the equipment or utensil, and on the type of soil to be removed.

(5) Washing, procedures for alternative manual warewashing equipment. If washing in sink compartments or a warewashing machine is impractical such as when the equipment is fixed or the utensils are too large, washing shall be done by using alternative manual warewashing equipment as specified in subsection (g)(2)(C) of this section in accordance with the following procedures:

**§229.165(o)**

**§229.165(o)**

(A) equipment shall be disassembled as necessary to allow access of the detergent solution to all parts;

(B) equipment components and utensils shall be scrapped or rough cleaned to remove food particle accumulation; and

(C) equipment and utensils shall be washed as specified under paragraph (4)(A) of this subsection.

(6) Rinsing procedures. Washed utensils and equipment shall be rinsed so that abrasives are removed and cleaning chemicals are removed or diluted through the use of water or a detergent-sanitizer solution by using one of the following procedures:

(A) use of a distinct, separate water rinse after washing and before sanitizing if using:

(i) a three-compartment sink;

(ii) alternative manual warewashing equipment equivalent to a three-compartment sink as specified in subsection (g)(2)(C) of this section; or

(iii) a three-step washing, rinsing, and sanitizing procedure in a warewashing system for CIP equipment;

(B) use of a detergent-sanitizer as specified under subsection (k)(15) of this section if using:

(i) alternative warewashing equipment as specified in subsection (g)(2)(C) of this section that is approved for use with a detergent-sanitizer; or

(ii) a warewashing system for CIP equipment;

(C) use of a nondistinct water rinse that is integrated in the hot water sanitization immersion step of a two-compartment sink operation;

(D) if using a warewashing machine that does not recycle the sanitizing solution as specified under subparagraph (E) of this paragraph, or alternative manual warewashing equipment such as sprayers, use of a nondistinct water rinse that is:

(i) integrated in the application of the sanitizing solution; and

(ii) washed immediately after each application; or

**§229.165(o)**

**§229.165(q)**

(E) if using a warewashing machine that recycles the sanitizing solution for use in the next wash cycle, use of a nondistinct water rinse that is integrated in the application of the sanitizing solution.

(7) Returnables, cleaning for refilling.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph, returned empty containers intended for cleaning and refilling with food shall be cleaned and refilled in a regulated food processing plant.

#25

(B) A food-specific container for beverages may be refilled at a food establishment if:

(i) only a beverage that is not a potentially hazardous food is used as specified under §229.164(h)(7)(A) of this title;

(ii) the design of the container and of the rinsing equipment and the nature of the beverage, when considered together, allow effective cleaning at home or in the food establishment;

(iii) facilities for rinsing before refilling returned containers with fresh, hot water that is under pressure and not recirculated are provided as part of the dispensing system;

(iv) the consumer-owned container returned to the food establishment for refilling is refilled for sale or service only to the same consumer; and

(v) the container is refilled by:

(I) an employee of the food establishment, or

(II) the owner of the container if the beverage system includes a contamination-free transfer process that can not be bypassed by the container owner.

(C) Consumer-owned containers that are not food-specific may be filled at a water vending machine or system.

(p) Sanitization, food-contact surfaces and utensils. Equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils shall be sanitized.

#25

(q) Sanitization frequency before use after cleaning. Utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment shall be sanitized before use after cleaning.

#25

**§229.165(r)**

**§229.165(t)**

#21 (r) Sanitization methods, hot water and chemical. After being cleaned, equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils shall be sanitized in:

(1) hot water manual operations by immersion for at least 30 seconds and as specified under subsection (k)(11) of this section;

(2) hot water mechanical operations by being cycled through equipment that is set up as specified under subsection (k)(5), (12) and (13) of this section and achieving a utensil surface temperature of 71 degrees Celsius (160 degrees Fahrenheit) as measured by an irreversible registering temperature indicator; or

(3) chemical manual or mechanical operations, including the application of sanitizing chemicals by immersion, manual swabbing, brushing, or pressure spraying methods, using a solution as specified under subsection (k)(14) of this section by providing:

(A) except as specified under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph, an exposure time of at least 10 seconds for a chlorine solution specified under subsection (k)(14)(A) of this section;

(B) an exposure time of at least 7 seconds for a chlorine solution of 50 mg/L that has a pH of 10 or less and a temperature of at least 38 degrees Celsius (100 degrees Fahrenheit) or a pH of 8 or less and a temperature of at least 24 degrees Celsius (75 degrees Fahrenheit);

(C) An exposure time of at least 30 seconds for other chemical sanitizing solutions; or

(D) An exposure time used in relationship with a combination of temperature, concentration, and pH that, when evaluated for efficacy, yields sanitization as defined in §229.162(91) of this title (relating to Definitions).

(s) Laundering, clean linens. Clean linens shall be free from food residues and other soiling matter.

(t) Laundering, frequency.

(1) Linens that do not come in direct contact with food shall be laundered between operations if they become wet, sticky, or visibly soiled.

(2) Cloth gloves used as specified in §229.164(h)(5)(D) of this title shall be laundered before being used with a different type of raw animal food such as beef, lamb, pork, and fish.

**§229.165(t)**

**§229.165(v)**

(3) Linens and napkins that are used as specified under §229.164(h)(4) of this title and cloth napkins shall be laundered between each use.

(4) Wet wiping cloths shall be laundered daily.

(5) Dry wiping cloths shall be laundered as necessary to prevent contamination of food and clean serving utensils.

(u) Laundering, methods.

(1) Storage of soiled linens. Soiled linens shall be kept in clean, nonabsorbent receptacles or clean, washable laundry bags and stored and transported to prevent contamination of food, clean equipment, clean utensils, and single-service and single-use articles.

(2) Mechanical washing.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, linens shall be mechanically washed.

(B) In food establishments in which only wiping cloths are laundered as specified in subsection (g)(5)(B) of this section, the wiping cloths may be laundered in a mechanical washer, sink designated only for laundering wiping cloths, or a warewashing or food preparation sink that is cleaned as specified under subsection (k)(14) of this section.

(3) Use of laundry facilities.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, laundry facilities on the premises of a food establishment shall be used only for the washing and drying of items used in the operation of the establishment.

(B) Separate laundry facilities located on the premises for the purpose of general laundering such as for institutions providing boarding and lodging may also be used for laundering food establishment items.

(v) Drying, equipment and utensils.

(1) Equipment and utensils, air-drying required. After cleaning and sanitizing, equipment and utensils:

(A) shall be air-dried or used after adequate draining as specified in paragraph (a) of 21 CFR §178.1010, Sanitizing Solutions, before contact with food; and

(B) may not be cloth dried except that utensils that have been air-dried may be polished with cloths that are maintained clean and dry.

**§229.165(v)**

**§229.165(x)**

(2) Wiping cloths, air-drying locations. Wiping cloths laundered in a food establishment that does not have a mechanical clothes dryer as specified in subsection (g)(5)(B) of this section shall be air-dried in a location and in a manner that prevents contamination of food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles and the wiping cloths. This section does not apply if wiping cloths are stored after laundering in a sanitizing solution as specified under subsection (k)(14) of this section.

(w) Lubricating and reassembling of food-contact surfaces, equipment.

(1) Food-contact surfaces. Lubricants shall be applied to food-contact surfaces that require lubrication in a manner that does not contaminate food-contact surfaces.

(2) Equipment. Equipment shall be reassembled so that food-contact surfaces are not contaminated.

(x) Storage.

(1) Equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, cleaned equipment and utensils, laundered linens, and single-service and single-use articles shall be stored:

(i) in a clean, dry location;

(ii) where they are not exposed to splash, dust, or other contamination; and

(iii) at least 15 cm (6 inches) above the floor.

(B) Clean equipment and utensils shall be stored as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph and shall be stored:

(i) in a self-draining position that allows air drying; and

(ii) covered or inverted.

(C) Single-service and single-use articles shall be stored as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph and shall be kept in the original protective package or stored by using other means that afford protection from contamination until used.

(D) Items that are kept in closed packages may be stored less than 15 cm (6 inches) above the floor on dollies, pallets, racks, and skids that are designed as specified under subsection (f)(22) of this section.

(2) Storage prohibitions.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, cleaned and sanitized equipment, utensils, laundered linens, and single-service and single-use articles may not be stored:

(i) in locker rooms;

(ii) in toilet rooms;

(iii) in garbage rooms;

(iv) in mechanical rooms;

(v) under sewer lines that are not shielded to intercept potential drips;

(vi) under leaking water lines including leaking automatic fire sprinkler heads or under lines on which water has condensed;

(vii) under open stairwells; or

(viii) under other sources of contamination.

(B) Laundered linens and single-service and single-use articles that are packaged or in a facility such as a cabinet may be stored in a locker room.

(y) Handling of utensils, single service articles.

(1) Kitchenware and tableware.

(A) Single-service and single-use articles and cleaned and sanitized utensils shall be handled, displayed, and dispensed so that contamination of food- and lip-contact surfaces is prevented.

(B) Knives, forks, and spoons that are not prewrapped shall be presented so that only the handles are touched by employees and by consumers if consumer self-service is provided.

(C) Except as specified under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, single-service articles that are intended for food- or lip-contact shall be furnished for consumer self-service with the original individual wrapper intact or from an approved dispenser.

**§229.165(y)**

**§229.165(y)**

(2) Soiled and clean tableware. Soiled tableware shall be removed from consumer eating and drinking areas and handled so that clean tableware is not contaminated.

(3) Preset tableware. If tableware is preset:

(A) it shall be protected from contamination by being wrapped, covered, or inverted;

(B) exposed, unused settings shall be removed when a consumer is seated; or

(C) exposed, unused settings shall be cleaned and sanitized before further use if the settings are not removed when a consumer is seated.



**§229.166(a)**

**§229.166(b)**

§229.166. Water, Plumbing, and Waste.

(a) Source.

(1) Approved system. Drinking water shall be obtained from an approved source that is:

#14

(A) a public water system; or

(B) a nonpublic water system that is constructed, maintained, and operated according to law.

(2) System flushing and disinfection. A drinking water system shall be flushed and disinfected before being placed in service after construction, repair, or modification and after an emergency situation, such as a flood, that may introduce contaminants to the system.

(3) Bottled drinking water. Bottled drinking water used or sold in a food establishment shall be obtained from approved sources in accordance with 21 CFR 129 - Processing and Bottling of Bottled Drinking Water.

(b) Water quality standards.

(1) Public and private water systems. Except as specified under §229.166(b)(2):

#14

(A) Water from a public water system shall meet 40 CFR 141 - National Primary Drinking Water Regulations, and state drinking water quality standards in accordance with 30 TAC §§290.101 - 290.114, 290.117 - 290.119, 290.121, and 290.122 (Drinking Water Standards Governing Drinking Water Quality and Reporting Requirement for Public Water Systems); and

(B) Water from a nonpublic water system shall meet state drinking water quality standards.

(2) Nondrinking water.

(A) A nondrinking water supply shall be used only if its use is approved by the regulatory authority.

(B) Nondrinking water shall be used only for nonculinary purposes such as air conditioning, nonfood equipment cooling, fire protection, and irrigation.

(3) Sampling. Except when used as specified under paragraph (2) of this subsection, water from a nonpublic water system shall be sampled and tested at least annually and as required by state water quality regulations.

**§229.166(b)**

**§229.166(d)**

(4) Sample report. The most recent sample report for the nonpublic water system shall be retained on file in the food establishment or the report shall be maintained as specified by state water quality regulations.

(c) Water quantity and availability.

#14

(1) Capacity. The water source and system shall be of sufficient capacity to meet the peak water demands of the food establishment.

(2) Pressure. Water under pressure shall be provided to all fixtures, equipment, and nonfood equipment that are required to use water except that water supplied as specified under subsection (d)(2)(A) and (B) of this section to a temporary food establishment or in response to a temporary interruption of a water supply need not be under pressure.

(3) Hot water. Hot water generation and distribution systems shall be sufficient to meet the peak hot water demands throughout the food establishment.

(d) Water distribution, delivery, and retention systems.

(1) Distribution. Water shall be received from the source through the use of:

(A) an approved public water main; or

(B) one or more of the following that shall be constructed, maintained, and operated according to law:

(i) nonpublic water main, water pumps, pipes, hoses, connections, and other appurtenances;

(ii) water transport vehicles; and

(iii) water containers.

(2) Alternative water supply. Water meeting the requirements specified under subsections (a) - (c) of this section shall be made available for a mobile facility, for a temporary food establishment without a permanent water supply, and for a food establishment with a temporary interruption of its water supply through:

(A) a supply of containers of commercially bottled drinking water;

(B) one or more closed portable water containers;

(C) an enclosed vehicular water tank;

**§229.166(d)**

**§229.166(f)**

(D) an on-premises water storage tank; or

(E) piping, tubing, or hoses connected to an adjacent approved source.

(e) Plumbing systems, approved materials.

(1) Construction. A plumbing system and hoses conveying water shall be constructed and repaired with approved materials according to law. #14

(2) Water filter. A water filter shall be made of safe materials.

(f) Plumbing design, construction, and installation.

(1) Approved system and cleanable fixtures.

(A) A plumbing system shall be designed, constructed, and installed according to law. #14

(B) A plumbing fixture such as a handwashing facility, toilet, or urinal shall be easily cleanable.

(2) Handwashing facility, installation.

(A) A handwashing lavatory shall be equipped to provide water at a temperature of at least 38 degrees Celsius (100 degrees Fahrenheit) through a mixing valve or combination faucet. #16

(B) A steam mixing valve may not be used at a handwashing lavatory.

(C) A self-closing, slow-closing, or metering faucet shall provide a flow of water for at least 15 seconds without the need to reactivate the faucet.

(3) An automatic handwashing facility shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. #14

(4) Backflow prevention, air gap. An air gap between the water supply inlet and the flood level rim of the plumbing fixture, equipment, or nonfood equipment shall be at least twice the diameter of the water supply inlet and may not be less than 25 mm (1 inch). #14

(5) Backflow prevention device, design standard. A backflow or backsiphonage prevention device installed on a water supply system shall meet American Society of Sanitary Engineering (ASSE) standards for construction, installation, maintenance, inspection, and testing for that specific application and type of device.

**§229.166(f)**

**§229.166(g)**

(6) Conditioning device, design. A water filter, screen, and other water conditioning device installed on water lines shall be designed to facilitate disassembly for periodic servicing and cleaning. A water filter element shall be of the replaceable type.

(g) Plumbing, numbers and capacities.

(1) Handwashing facilities.

#16 (A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, at least one handwashing lavatory, a number of handwashing lavatories necessary for their convenient use by employees in areas specified under subsection (h)(1) of this section, and not fewer than the number of handwashing lavatories required by law shall be provided.

(B) If approved and capable of removing the types of soils encountered in the food operations involved, automatic handwashing facilities may be substituted for handwashing lavatories in a food establishment that has at least one handwashing lavatory.

#23 (2) Toilets and urinals. At least one toilet and not fewer than the toilets required by law shall be provided. If authorized by law and urinals are substituted for toilets, the substitution shall be done as specified in law.

(3) Service sink. At least one service sink or one curbed cleaning facility equipped with a floor drain shall be provided and conveniently located for the cleaning of mops or similar wet floor cleaning tools and for the disposal of mop water and similar liquid waste.

#14 (4) Backflow prevention device, when required. A plumbing system shall be installed to preclude backflow of a solid, liquid, or gas contaminant into the water supply system at each point of use at the food establishment, including on a hose bibb if a hose is attached or on a hose bibb if a hose is not attached and backflow prevention is required by law, by:

(A) providing an air gap as specified under subsection (f)(4) of this section; or

(B) installing an approved backflow prevention device as specified under subsection (f)(5) of this section.

(5) Backflow prevention device, carbonator.

(A) If not provided with an air gap as specified under subsection (f)(4) of this section, a double check valve with an intermediate vent preceded by a screen of not less than 100 mesh to 25.4mm (100 mesh to 1 inch) shall be installed upstream from a carbonating device and downstream from any copper in the water supply line.

**§229.166(g)**

**§229.166(i)**

(B) A single or double check valve attached to the carbonator need not be of the vented type if an air gap or vented backflow prevention device has been otherwise provided as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph.

(h) Plumbing, location and placement.

(1) Handwashing facilities. A handwashing facility shall be located:

#16

(A) to allow convenient use by employees in food preparation, food dispensing, and warewashing areas; and

(B) in, or immediately adjacent to, toilet rooms.

(2) Backflow prevention device, location. A backflow prevention device shall be located so that it may be serviced and maintained.

(3) Conditioning device, location. A water filter, screen, and other water conditioning device installed on water lines shall be located to facilitate disassembly for periodic servicing and cleaning.

(i) Plumbing, operation and maintenance.

(1) Using a handwashing facility.

(A) A handwashing facility shall be maintained so that it is accessible at all times for employee use.

#16

(B) A handwashing facility may not be used for purposes other than handwashing.

#8

(C) An automatic handwashing facility shall be used in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#16

(2) Prohibiting a cross connection.

(A) Except as specified in 9 CFR §308.3(d), and 30 TAC §290.44(h) for firefighting, a person may not create a cross connection by connecting a pipe or conduit between the drinking water system and a nondrinking water system or a water system of unknown quality.

#14

(B) The piping of a nondrinking water system shall be durably identified so that it is readily distinguishable from piping that carries drinking water.

(3) Scheduling inspection and service for a water system device. A device such as a water treatment device or backflow preventer shall be scheduled for inspection and service, in

**§229.166(i)**

**§229.166(i)**

accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as necessary to prevent device failure based on local water conditions, and records demonstrating inspection and service shall be maintained by the person in charge.

**#14** (4) Water reservoir of fogging devices, cleaning.

(A) A reservoir that is used to supply water to a device such as a produce fogger shall be:

(i) maintained in accordance with manufacturer's specifications;  
and

(ii) cleaned in accordance with manufacturer's specifications or according to the procedures specified under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, whichever is more stringent.

(B) Cleaning procedures shall include at least the following steps and shall be conducted at least once a week:

(i) draining and complete disassembly of the water and aerosol contact parts;

(ii) brush-cleaning the reservoir, aerosol tubing, and discharge nozzles with a suitable detergent solution;

(iii) flushing the complete system with water to remove the detergent solution and particulate accumulation; and

(iv) rinsing by immersing, spraying, or swabbing the reservoir, aerosol tubing, and discharge nozzles with at least 50 mg/L hypochlorite solution.

**#14 or #23** (5) System maintained in good repair. A plumbing system shall be:

(A) repaired according to law; and

(B) maintained in good repair.

(6) Mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank.

**#25** (A) Materials, approved. Materials that are used in the construction of a mobile water tank, mobile food establishment water tank, and appurtenances shall be:

(i) safe;

**§229.166(i)**

**§229.166(i)**

(ii) durable, corrosion-resistant, and nonabsorbent; and

(iii) finished to have a smooth, easily cleanable surface.

(B) Tank design and construction. A mobile water tank shall be:

(i) enclosed from the filling inlet to the discharge outlet; and

(ii) sloped to an outlet that allows complete drainage of the tank.

(C) Tank inspection and cleaning port, protected and secured. If a water tank is designed with an access port for inspection and cleaning, the opening shall be in the top of the tank and:

(i) flanged upward at least 13 mm (one-half inch); and

(ii) equipped with a port cover assembly that is:

(I) provided with a gasket and a device for securing the cover in place; and

(II) flanged to overlap the opening and sloped to drain.

(D) "V" type threads, use limitation. A fitting with "V" type threads on a water tank inlet or outlet shall be allowed only when a hose is permanently attached.

(E) Tank vent, protected. If provided, a water tank vent shall terminate in a downward direction and shall be covered with:

(i) 16 mesh to 25.4 mm (16 mesh to 1 inch) screen or equivalent when the vent is in a protected area; or

(ii) a protective filter when the vent is in an area that is not protected from windblown dirt and debris.

(F) Tank inlet and outlet, sloped to drain.

(i) A water tank and its inlet and outlet shall be sloped to drain.

(ii) A water tank inlet shall be positioned so that it is protected from contaminants such as waste discharge, road dust, oil, or grease.

(G) Tank hose, construction and identification. A hose used for conveying drinking water from a water tank shall be:

**#25**

(i) safe;

(ii) durable, corrosion-resistant, and nonabsorbent;

(iii) resistant to pitting, chipping, crazing, scratching, scoring, distortion, and decomposition;

(iv) finished with a smooth interior surface; and

(v) clearly and durably identified as to its use if not permanently attached.

(H) Tank filter, compressed air. A filter that does not pass oil or oil vapors shall be installed in the air supply line between the compressor and drinking water system when compressed air is used to pressurize the water tank system.

(I) Protective cover or device. A cap and keeper chain, closed cabinet, closed storage tube, or other approved protective cover or device shall be provided for a water inlet, outlet, and hose.

(J) Mobile food establishment tank inlet. A mobile food establishment's water tank inlet shall be:

(i) 19.1 mm (three-fourths inch) in inner diameter or less; and

(ii) provided with a hose connection of a size or type that will prevent its use for any other service.

**#14**

(K) Operation and maintenance, system flushing and disinfection. A water tank, pump, and hoses shall be flushed and sanitized before being placed in service after construction, repair, modification, and periods of nonuse.

(L) Using a pump and hoses, backflow prevention. A person shall operate a water tank, pump, and hoses so that backflow and other contamination of the water supply are prevented.

(M) Protecting inlet, outlet, and hose fitting. If not in use, a water tank and hose inlet and outlet fitting shall be protected using a cover or device as specified in subparagraph (I) of this paragraph.

(N) Tank, pump, and hoses, dedication.



**§229.166(i)**

**§229.166(k)**

(i) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, a water tank, pump, and hoses used for conveying drinking water shall be used for no other purpose.

(ii) Water tanks, pumps, and hoses approved for liquid foods may be used for conveying drinking water if they are cleaned and sanitized before they are used to convey water.

(j) Sewage retention, drainage, and delivery.

(1) Food establishment drainage systems, including grease traps, that convey sewage shall be designed and installed as specified under subsection (f)(1)(A) of this section.

(2) Backflow prevention.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph, a direct connection may not exist between the sewage system and a drain originating from equipment in which food, portable equipment, or utensils are placed.

#23

(B) If allowed by law, a warewashing machine may have a direct connection between its waste outlet and a floor drain when the machine is located within 1.5 m (5 feet) of a trapped floor drain and the machine outlet is connected to the inlet side of a properly vented floor drain trap.

(C) If allowed by law, a warewashing or culinary sink may have a direct connection.

(3) Grease trap. If used, a grease trap shall be located to be easily accessible for cleaning, operation, and maintenance.

(4) Conveying sewage. Sewage shall be conveyed to the point of disposal through an approved sanitary sewage system or other system, including use of sewage transport vehicles, waste retention tanks, pumps, pipes, hoses, and connections that are constructed, maintained, and operated according to law.

(k) Disposal facility.

(1) Approved sewage disposal system. Sewage shall be disposed through an approved facility that is:

#23

(A) a public sewage treatment plant; or

(B) an individual sewage disposal system that is sized, constructed, maintained, and operated according to law.

**§229.166(k)**

**§229.166(l)**

(2) Other liquid wastes and rainwater. Condensate drainage and other nonsewage liquids and rainwater shall be drained from point of discharge to disposal according to law.

(l) Storage facilities on the premises.

(1) Indoor storage area. If located within the food establishment, a storage area for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall meet the requirements specified under §229.167(a), (c)(1) - (8), (d)(5) and (6) of this title (relating to Physical Facilities).

(2) Outdoor storage surface. An outdoor storage surface for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be constructed of nonabsorbent material such as concrete or asphalt and shall be smooth, durable, and sloped to drain.

(3) Outdoor enclosure. If used, an outdoor enclosure for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be constructed of durable and cleanable materials.

(4) Receptacles.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables and for use with materials containing food residue shall be durable, cleanable, insect and rodent-resistant, leakproof, and nonabsorbent.

(B) Plastic bags and wet strength paper bags may be used to line receptacles for storage inside the food establishment, or within closed outside receptacles.

(5) Receptacles in vending machines. A refuse receptacle may not be located within a vending machine, except that a receptacle for beverage bottle crown closures may be located within a vending machine.

(6) Outside receptacles.

(A) Receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables used with materials containing food residue and used outside the food establishment shall be designed and constructed to have tight-fitting lids, doors, or covers.

(B) Receptacles and waste handling units for refuse and recyclables such as an on-site compactor shall be installed so that accumulation of debris and insect and rodent attraction and harborage are minimized and effective cleaning is facilitated around and, if the unit is not installed flush with the base pad, under the unit.

(7) Storage areas, rooms, and receptacles, capacity and availability.

**§229.166(I)**

**§229.166(I)**

(A) An inside storage room and area and outside storage area and enclosure, and receptacles shall be of sufficient capacity to hold refuse, recyclables, and returnables that accumulate.

(B) A receptacle shall be provided in each area of the food establishment or premises where refuse is generated or commonly discarded, or where recyclables or returnables are placed.

(C) If disposable towels are used at handwashing lavatories, a waste receptacle shall be located at each lavatory or group of adjacent lavatories.

(8) Toilet room receptacle, covered. A toilet room used by females shall be provided with a covered receptacle for sanitary napkins.

(9) Cleaning implements and supplies.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, suitable cleaning implements and supplies such as high pressure pumps, hot water, steam, and detergent shall be provided as necessary for effective cleaning of receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables.

(B) If approved, off-premises-based cleaning services may be used if on-premises cleaning implements and supplies are not provided.

(10) Storage areas, redeeming machines, receptacles and waste handling units, location.

(A) An area designated for refuse, recyclables, returnables, and, except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, a redeeming machine for recyclables or returnables shall be located so that it is separate from food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles and a public health hazard or nuisance is not created.

(B) A redeeming machine may be located in the packaged food storage area or consumer area of a food establishment if food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles are not subject to contamination from the machines and a public health hazard or nuisance is not created.

(C) The location of receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables may not create a public health hazard or nuisance or interfere with the cleaning of adjacent space.

(11) Storing refuse, recyclables, and returnables. Refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be stored in receptacles or waste handling units so that they are inaccessible to insects and rodents.

**§229.166(I)**

**§229.166(I)**

(12) Areas, enclosures, and receptacles, good repair. Storage areas, enclosures, and receptacles for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be maintained in good repair.

(13) Outside storage prohibitions.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, refuse receptacles not meeting the requirements specified under subsection (I)(4)(A) of this section such as receptacles that are not rodent-resistant, unprotected plastic bags and paper bags, or baled units that contain materials with food residue may not be stored outside.

(B) Cardboard or other packaging material that does not contain food residues and that is awaiting regularly scheduled delivery to a recycling or disposal site may be stored outside without being in a covered receptacle if it is stored so that it does not create a rodent harborage problem.

(14) Covering receptacles. Receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be kept covered:

(A) inside the food establishment if the receptacles and units:

- (i) contain food residue and are not in continuous use; or
- (ii) after they are filled; and

(B) with tight-fitting lids or doors if kept outside the food establishment.

(15) Using drain plugs. Drains in receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall have drain plugs in place.

(16) Maintaining refuse areas and enclosures. A storage area and enclosure for refuse, recyclables, or returnables shall be maintained free of unnecessary items, as specified under §229.167(p)(15) of this title, and clean.

(17) Cleaning receptacles.

(A) Receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be thoroughly cleaned in a way that does not contaminate food, equipment, utensils, linens, or single-service and single-use articles, and waste water shall be disposed of as specified under subsection (j)(4) of this section.

(B) Soiled receptacles and waste handling units for refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be cleaned at a frequency necessary to prevent them from developing a buildup of soil or becoming attractants for insects and rodents.

**§229.166(m)**

**§229.166(m)**

(m) Refuse removal.

(1) Frequency. Refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be removed from the premises at a frequency that will minimize the development of objectionable odors and other conditions that attract or harbor insects and rodents.

(2) Receptacles or vehicles. Refuse, recyclables, and returnables shall be removed from the premises by way of:

(A) portable receptacles that are constructed and maintained according to law; or

(B) a transport vehicle that is constructed, maintained, and operated according to law.

(n) Facilities for disposal and recycling, community or individual facility. Solid waste not disposed of through the sewage system such as through grinders and pulpers shall be recycled or disposed of in an approved public or private community recycling or refuse facility; or solid waste shall be disposed of in an individual refuse facility such as a landfill or incinerator which is sized, constructed, maintained, and operated according to law.

**§229.167(a)**

**§229.167(c)**

§229.167. Physical Facilities.

(a) Indoor areas, surface characteristics. Materials for indoor floor, wall, and ceiling surfaces under conditions of normal use shall be:

(1) smooth, durable, and easily cleanable for areas where food establishment operations are conducted;

(2) closely woven and easily cleanable carpet for carpeted areas; and

(3) nonabsorbent for areas subject to moisture such as food preparation areas, walk-in refrigerators, warewashing areas, toilet rooms, mobile food establishment servicing areas, and areas subject to flushing or spray cleaning methods.

(b) Outdoor areas, surface characteristics.

(1) Walking and driving areas. The outdoor walking and driving areas shall be surfaced with concrete, asphalt, or gravel or other materials that have been effectively treated to minimize dust, facilitate maintenance, and prevent muddy conditions.

(2) Exterior surfaces. Exterior surfaces of buildings and mobile food establishments shall be of weather-resistant materials and shall comply with law.

(3) Storage areas. Outdoor storage areas for refuse, recyclables, or returnables shall be of materials specified under §229.166(1)(2) and (3) of this title (relating to Water, Plumbing and Waste).

(c) Floors, walls, and ceilings.

(1) Cleanability. Except as specified under paragraph (4) of this subsection, the floors, floor coverings, walls, wall coverings, and ceilings shall be designed, constructed, and installed so they are smooth and easily cleanable, except that antislip floor coverings or applications may be used for safety reasons.

(2) Floors, walls, and ceilings, utility lines.

(A) Utility service lines and pipes may not be unnecessarily exposed.

(B) Exposed utility service lines and pipes shall be installed so they do not obstruct or prevent cleaning of the floors, walls, or ceilings.

(C) Exposed horizontal utility service lines and pipes may not be installed on the floor.

**§229.167(c)**

**§229.167(c)**

(3) Floor and wall junctures, coved, and enclosed or sealed.

(A) In food establishments in which cleaning methods other than water flushing are used for cleaning floors, the floor and wall junctures shall be coved and closed to no larger than 1 mm (one thirty-second inch).

(B) The floors in food establishments in which water flush cleaning methods are used shall be provided with drains and be graded to drain, and the floor and wall junctures shall be covered and sealed.

(4) Floor carpeting, restrictions and installation.

(A) A floor covering such as carpeting or similar material may not be installed as a floor covering in food preparation areas, walk-in refrigerators, warewashing areas, toilet room areas where handwashing lavatories, toilets, and urinals are located, refuse storage rooms, or other areas where the floor is subject to moisture, flushing, or spray cleaning methods.

(B) If carpeting is installed as a floor covering in areas other than those specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, it shall be:

(i) securely attached to the floor with a durable mastic, by using a stretch and tack method, or by another method; and

(ii) installed tightly against the wall under the coving or installed away from the wall with a space between the carpet and the wall and with the edges of the carpet secured by metal stripping or some other means.

(5) Floor covering, mats and duckboards. Mats and duckboards shall be designed to be removable and easily cleanable.

(6) Wall and ceiling coverings and coatings.

(A) Wall and ceiling covering materials shall be attached so that they are easily cleanable.

(B) Except in areas used only for dry storage, concrete, porous blocks, or bricks used for indoor wall construction shall be finished and sealed to provide a smooth, nonabsorbent, easily cleanable surface.

(7) Walls and ceilings, attachments.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, attachments to walls and ceilings such as light fixtures, mechanical room ventilation system components,

**§229.167(c)**

vent covers, wall mounted fans, decorative items, and other attachments shall be easily cleanable.

(B) In a consumer area, wall and ceiling surfaces and decorative items and attachments that are provided for ambiance need not meet this requirement if they are kept clean.

(8) Walls and ceilings, studs, joists, and rafters. Studs, joists, and rafters may not be exposed in areas subject to moisture. This requirement does not apply to temporary food establishments.

(d) Functionality.

(1) Light bulbs, protective shielding.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, light bulbs shall be shielded, coated, or otherwise shatter-resistant in areas where there is exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; or unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.

(B) Shielded, coated, or otherwise shatter-resistant bulbs need not be used in areas used only for storing food in unopened packages; if:

(i) the integrity of the packages can not be affected by broken glass falling onto them; and

(ii) the packages are capable of being cleaned of debris from broken bulbs before the packages are opened.

(C) An infrared or other heat lamp shall be protected against breakage by a shield surrounding and extending beyond the bulb so that only the face of the bulb is exposed.

(2) Heating, ventilating, air conditioning system vents. Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems shall be designed and installed so that make-up air intake and exhaust vents do not cause contamination of food, food-contact surfaces, equipment, or utensils.

(3) Insect control devices, design and installation.

(A) Insect control devices that are used to electrocute or stun flying insects shall be designed to retain the insect within the device.

(B) Insect control devices shall be installed so that:

(i) the devices are not located over a food preparation area; and

**§229.167(d)**



**§229.167(d)**

**§229.167(d)**

(ii) dead insects and insect fragments are prevented from being impelled onto or falling on exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.

(4) Toilet rooms, enclosed. A toilet room located on the premises shall be completely enclosed and provided with a tight-fitting and self-closing door except that this requirement does not apply to a toilet room that is located outside a food establishment and does not open directly into the food establishment such as a toilet room that is provided by the management of a shopping mall.

(5) Outer openings, protected.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) - (E) of this paragraph, outer openings of a food establishment shall be protected against the entry of insects and rodents by:

(i) filling or closing holes and other gaps along floors, walls, and ceilings;

(ii) closed, tight-fitting windows; and

(iii) solid, self-closing, tight-fitting doors.

(B) Subparagraph (A) of this paragraph does not apply if a food establishment opens into a larger structure, such as a mall, airport, or office building, or into an attached structure, such as a porch, and the outer openings from the larger or attached structure are protected against the entry of insects and rodents.

(C) Exterior doors used as exits need not be self-closing if they are:

(i) solid and tight-fitting;

(ii) designated for use only when an emergency exists, by the fire protection authority that has jurisdiction over the food establishment; and

(iii) limited-use so they are not used for entrance or exit from the building for purposes other than the designated emergency exit use.

(D) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (E) of this paragraph, if the windows or doors of a food establishment, or of a larger structure within which a food establishment is located, are kept open for ventilation or other purposes or a temporary food establishment is not provided with windows and doors as specified under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, the openings shall be protected against the entry of insects and rodents by:

**§229.167(d)**

**§229.167(e)**

- (i) 16 mesh to 25.4mm (16 mesh to 1 inch) screens;
- (ii) properly designed and installed air curtains to control flying insects; or
- (iii) other effective means.

(E) Subparagraph (D) of this paragraph does not apply if flying insects and other pests are absent due to the location of the establishment, the weather, or other limiting condition.

(6) Exterior walls and roofs, protective barrier. Perimeter walls and roofs of a food establishment shall effectively protect the establishment from the weather and the entry of insects, rodents, and other animals.

(7) Outdoor food vending areas, overhead protection. If located outside, a machine used to vend food shall be provided with overhead protection except that machines vending canned beverages need not meet this requirement.

(8) Outdoor walking and driving surfaces, graded to drain. Exterior walking and driving surfaces shall be graded to drain.

(9) Outdoor refuse areas, curbed and graded to drain. Outdoor refuse areas shall be constructed in accordance with law and shall be curbed and graded to drain to collect and dispose of liquid waste that results from the refuse and from cleaning the area and waste receptacles.

**#9** (10) Private homes and living or sleeping quarters, use prohibition. A private home, a room used as living or sleeping quarters, or an area directly opening into a room used as living or sleeping quarters may not be used for conducting food establishment operations.

(11) Living or sleeping quarters, separation. Living or sleeping quarters located on the premises of a food establishment such as those provided for lodging registration clerks or resident managers shall be separated from rooms and areas used for food establishment operations by complete partitioning and solid self-closing doors.

(e) Handwashing facilities.

**#16** (1) Minimum number. Handwashing facilities shall be provided as specified under §229.166(g)(1) of this title.

**#17** (2) Handwashing cleanser, availability. Each handwashing lavatory or group of 2 adjacent lavatories shall be provided with a supply of hand cleaning liquid, powder, or bar soap.

**§229.167(e)**

**§229.167(g)**

(3) Hand drying provision. Each handwashing lavatory or group of adjacent lavatories shall be provided with:

**#17**

(A) individual, disposable towels;

(B) a continuous towel system that supplies the user with a clean towel; or

(C) a heated-air hand drying device.

(4) Handwashing aids and devices, use restrictions. A sink used for food preparation or utensil washing, or a service sink or curbed cleaning facility used for the disposal of mop water or similar wastes, may not be provided with the handwashing aids and devices required for a handwashing lavatory as specified in paragraphs (2) and (3) of this subsection and §229.166(1)(7)(C) of this title.

(5) Handwashing signage. A sign, icon, or poster that notifies food employees to wash their hands shall be provided at all handwashing lavatories used by food employees and shall be clearly visible to food employees.

(6) Disposable towels, waste receptacle. A handwashing lavatory or group of adjacent lavatories that is provided with disposable towels shall be provided with a waste receptacle as specified under §229.166(1)(7)(C) of this title.

(f) Toilets and urinals.

(1) Minimum number. Toilets and urinals shall be provided as specified under §229.166(g)(2) of this title.

(2) Toilet tissue, availability. A supply of toilet tissue shall be available at each toilet.

**#23**

(g) Lighting, intensity. The light intensity shall be:

(1) at least 110 lux (10 foot candles) at a distance of 75 cm (30 inches) above the floor, in walk-in refrigeration units and dry food storage areas and in other areas and rooms during periods of cleaning;

(2) at least 220 lux (20 foot candles):

(A) at a surface where food is provided for consumer self-service such as buffets and salad bars or where fresh produce or packaged foods are sold or offered for consumption;

(B) inside equipment such as reach-in and under-counter refrigerators;

**§229.167(g)**

**§229.167(n)**

(C) at a distance of 75 cm (30 inches) above the floor in areas used for handwashing, warewashing, and equipment and utensil storage, and in toilet rooms; and

(3) at least 540 lux (50 foot candles) at a surface where a food employee is working with food or working with utensils or equipment such as knives, slicers, grinders, or saws where employee safety is a factor.

(h) Ventilation, mechanical. If necessary to keep rooms free of excessive heat, steam, condensation, vapors, obnoxious odors, smoke, and fumes, mechanical ventilation of sufficient capacity shall be provided.

(i) Dressing areas and lockers, designation.

(1) Dressing rooms or dressing areas shall be designated if employees routinely change their clothes in the establishment.

(2) Lockers or other suitable facilities shall be provided for the orderly storage of employees' clothing and other possessions.

(j) Service sinks, availability. A service sink or curbed cleaning facility shall be provided as specified under §229.166(g)(3) of this title.

(k) Handwashing facilities, conveniently located. Handwashing facilities shall be conveniently located as specified under §229.166(h)(1) of this title.

(l) Toilet rooms, convenience and accessibility. Toilet rooms shall be conveniently located and accessible to employees during all hours of operation.

(m) Employee accommodations, designated areas.

(1) Areas designated for employees to eat, drink, and use tobacco shall be located so that food, equipment, linens, and single-service and single-use articles are protected from contamination.

(2) Lockers or other suitable facilities shall be located in a designated room or area where contamination of food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles cannot occur.

(n) Distressed merchandise, segregation and location. Products that are held by the permit holder for credit, redemption, or return to the distributor, such as damaged, spoiled, or recalled products, shall be segregated and held in designated areas that are separated from food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

**§229.167(o)**

(o) Receptacles, waste handling units, and designated storage areas. Units, receptacles, and areas designated for storage of refuse and recyclable and returnable containers shall be located as specified under §229.166(l)(10)(A) of this title.

**§229.167(p)**

(p) Premises, buildings, systems, rooms, fixtures, equipment, devices, and materials.

(1) Repairing. The physical facilities shall be maintained in good repair.

(2) Cleaning, frequency and restrictions.

(A) The physical facilities shall be cleaned as often as necessary to keep them clean.

(B) Cleaning shall be done during periods when the least amount of food is exposed such as after closing. This requirement does not apply to cleaning that is necessary due to a spill or other accident.

(3) Cleaning floors, dustless methods.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, only dustless methods of cleaning shall be used, such as wet cleaning, vacuum cleaning, mopping with treated dust mops, or sweeping using a broom and dust-arresting compounds.

(B) Spills or drippage on floors that occur between normal floor cleaning times may be cleaned:

(i) without the use of dust-arresting compounds; and

(ii) in the case of liquid spills or drippage, with the use of a small amount of absorbent compound such as sawdust or diatomaceous earth applied immediately before spot cleaning.

(4) Cleaning ventilation systems, nuisance and discharge prohibition.

(A) Intake and exhaust air ducts shall be cleaned and filters changed so they are not a source of contamination by dust, dirt, and other materials.

(B) If vented to the outside, ventilation systems may not create a public health hazard or nuisance or unlawful discharge.

(5) Cleaning maintenance tools, preventing contamination. Food preparation sinks, handwashing lavatories, and warewashing equipment may not be used for the cleaning of maintenance tools, the preparation or holding of maintenance materials, or the disposal of mop water and similar liquid wastes.

#8

**§229.167(p)**

**§229.167(p)**

(6) Drying mops. After use, mops shall be placed in a position that allows them to air-dry without soiling walls, equipment, or supplies.

(7) Absorbent materials on floors, use limitation. Except as specified in paragraph (3)(A) of this subsection, sawdust, wood shavings, granular salt, baked clay, diatomaceous earth, or similar materials may not be used on floors.

(8) Maintaining and using handwashing facilities. Handwashing facilities shall be kept clean, and maintained and used as specified under §229.166(i)(1)(A) of this title.

(9) Closing toilet room doors. Toilet room doors as specified under subsection (d)(4) of this section shall be kept closed except during cleaning and maintenance operations.

(10) Using dressing rooms and lockers.

(A) Dressing rooms shall be used by employees if the employees regularly change their clothes in the establishment.

(B) Lockers or other suitable facilities shall be used for the orderly storage of employee clothing and other possessions.

**#18  
or  
#19** (11) Controlling pests. The presence of insects, rodents, and other pests shall be controlled to minimize their presence within the physical facility and its contents, and on the contiguous land or property under the control of the permit holder by:

(A) routinely inspecting incoming shipments of food and supplies;

(B) routinely inspecting the premises for evidence of pests;

(C) using methods, if pests are found, such as trapping devices or other means of pest control as specified under §§229.168(d)(2), (h)(2), and (h)(3)(A) of this title (relating to Poisonous or Toxic Materials); and

(D) eliminating harborage conditions.

(12) Removing dead or trapped birds, insects, rodents, and other pests. Dead or trapped birds, insects, rodents, and other pests shall be removed from control devices and the premises at a frequency that prevents their accumulation, decomposition, or the attraction of pests.

(13) Storing maintenance tools. Maintenance tools such as brooms, mops, vacuum cleaners, and similar items shall be:

**§229.167(p)**

**§229.167(p)**

(A) stored so they do not contaminate food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles; and

(B) stored in an orderly manner that facilitates cleaning the area used for storing the maintenance tools.

(14) Maintaining premises, unnecessary items and litter. The premises shall be free of:

(A) items that are unnecessary to the operation or maintenance of the establishment such as equipment that is nonfunctional or no longer used; and

(B) litter.

(15) Prohibiting animals.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph, live animals may not be allowed on the premises of a food establishment.

#19

(B) Live animals may be allowed in the following situations if the contamination of food, clean equipment, utensils, linens, and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles cannot result:

(i) edible fish or decorative fish in aquariums, shellfish or crustacea on ice or under refrigeration, and shellfish and crustacea in display tank systems;

(ii) patrol dogs accompanying police or security officers in offices and dining, sales, and storage areas, and sentry dogs running loose in outside fenced areas;

(iii) in areas that are not used for food preparation and that are usually open for customers, such as dining and sales areas, service animals that are controlled by the disabled employee or person, or service animals in training when accompanied by an approved trainer, if a health or safety hazard will not result from the presence or activities of the service animal;

(iv) pets in the common dining areas of institutional care facilities such as nursing homes, assisted living facilities, group homes, or residential care facilities at times other than during meals if:

(I) effective partitioning and self-closing doors separate the common dining areas from food storage or food preparation areas;

(II) condiments, equipment, and utensils are stored in enclosed cabinets or removed from the common dining areas when pets are present; and

**§229.167(p)**

**§229.167(p)**

#19 (III) dining areas including tables, countertops, and similar surfaces are effectively cleaned before the next meal service; and

(v) in areas that are not used for food preparation, storage, sales, display, or dining, in which there are caged animals or animals that are similarly confined, such as in a variety store that sells pets or a tourist park that displays animals.

#12 (C) Live or dead fish bait may be stored if contamination of food, clean equipment, utensils, linens, and unwrapped single-service and single-use articles cannot result.



**§229.168(a)**

**§229.168(d)**

§229.168. Poisonous or Toxic Materials.

(a) Original containers, identifying information, prominence. Containers of poisonous or toxic materials and personal care items shall bear a legible manufacturer's label.

#20

(b) Working containers, common name. Working containers used for storing poisonous or toxic materials such as cleaners and sanitizers taken from bulk supplies shall be clearly and individually identified with the common name of the material.

(c) Storage, separation. Poisonous or toxic materials shall be stored so they cannot contaminate food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles by:

(1) separating the poisonous or toxic materials by spacing or partitioning; and

(2) Locating the poisonous or toxic materials in an area that is not above food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service or single-use articles. This paragraph does not apply to equipment and utensil cleaners and sanitizers that are stored in warewashing areas for availability and convenience if the materials are stored to prevent contamination of food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

(d) Presence and use.

(1) Restriction.

(A) Only those poisonous or toxic materials that are required for the operation and maintenance of a food establishment, such as for the cleaning and sanitizing of equipment and utensils and the control of insects and rodents, shall be allowed in a food establishment.

#20

(B) Subparagraph (A) of this paragraph does not apply to packaged poisonous or toxic materials that are for retail sale.

(2) Conditions of use. Poisonous or toxic materials shall be:

(A) used according to:

(i) law and these rules;

(ii) manufacturer's use directions included in labeling, and, for a pesticide, manufacturer's label instructions that state that use is allowed in a food establishment;

(iii) the conditions of certification, if certification is required, for use of the pest control materials; and

§229.168(d)

§229.168(f)

#20 (iv) additional conditions that may be established by the regulatory authority; and

(B) applied so that:

(i) a hazard to employees or other persons is not constituted; and

(ii) contamination including toxic residues due to drip, drain, fog, splash or spray on food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles is prevented, and for a restricted use pesticide, this is achieved by:

(I) removing the items;

(II) covering the items with impermeable covers; or

(III) taking other appropriate preventive actions; and

(IV) cleaning and sanitizing equipment and utensils after the application.

(C) A restricted use pesticide shall be applied only by an applicator certified as defined in 7 USC 136(e), Certified Applicator of the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act, or a person under the direct supervision of a certified applicator.

#20 (e) Container prohibitions, poisonous or toxic material containers. A container previously used to store poisonous or toxic materials may not be used to store, transport, or dispense food.

(f) Chemicals.

#20 (1) Sanitizers, criteria. Chemical sanitizers and other chemical antimicrobials applied to food-contact surfaces shall meet the requirements specified in 21 CFR §178.1010, Sanitizing Solutions.

(2) Chemicals for washing fruits and vegetables, criteria. Chemicals used to wash or peel raw, whole fruits and vegetables shall meet the requirements specified in 21 CFR §173.315, Chemicals used in washing or to assist in the lye peeling of fruits and vegetables.

(3) Boiler water additives, criteria. Chemicals used as boiler water additives shall meet the requirements specified in 21 CFR §173.310, Boiler Water Additives.

(4) Drying agents, criteria. Drying agents used in conjunction with sanitization shall:

(A) contain only components that are listed as one of the following:

**§229.168(f)**

**§229.168(h)**

(i) generally recognized as safe for use in food as specified in 21 CFR 182, Substances Generally Recognized as Safe, or 21 CFR 184, Direct Food Substances Affirmed as Generally Recognized as Safe;

#20

(ii) generally recognized as safe for the intended use as specified in 21 CFR 186, Indirect Food Substances Affirmed as Generally Recognized as Safe;

(iii) approved for use as a drying agent under a prior sanction specified in 21 CFR 181, Prior-Sanctioned Food Ingredients;

(iv) specifically regulated as an indirect food additive for use as a drying agent as specified in 21 CFR 175 - 178; or

(v) approved for use as a drying agent under the threshold of regulation process established by 21 CFR §170.39, Threshold of regulation for substances used in food-contact articles; and

(B) when sanitization is with chemicals, the approval required under subparagraph (A)(iii) or (v) of this paragraph or the regulation as an indirect food additive required under subparagraph (A)(iv) of this paragraph, shall be specifically for use with chemical sanitizing solutions.

(g) Lubricants, incidental food contact, criteria. Lubricants shall meet the requirements specified in 21 CFR §178.3570, Lubricants with incidental food contact, if they are used on food-contact surfaces, on bearings and gears located on or within food-contact surfaces, or on bearings and gears that are located so that lubricants may leak, drip, or be forced into food or onto food-contact surfaces.

#20

(h) Pesticides.

(1) Restricted use pesticides, criteria. Restricted use pesticides specified in subsection (d)(2)(C) of this section shall meet the requirements specified in 40 CFR 152, Subpart I, Classification of Pesticides.

#20

(2) Rodent bait stations. Rodent bait shall be contained in a covered, tamper-resistant bait station.

(3) Tracking powders, pest control and monitoring.

(A) A tracking powder pesticide may not be used in a food establishment.

(B) If used, a nontoxic tracking powder such as talcum or flour may not contaminate food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

**§229.168(i)**

**§229.168(l)**

(i) Medicines.

(1) Restriction and storage.

**#20** (A) Only those medicines that are necessary for the health of employees shall be allowed in a food establishment. This section does not apply to medicines that are stored or displayed for retail sale.

(B) Medicines that are in a food establishment for the employees' use shall be labeled as specified in subsection (a) of this section and located to prevent the contamination of food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

(2) Refrigerated medicines, storage. Medicines belonging to employees or to children in a day care center that require refrigeration and are stored in a food refrigerator shall be:

(A) stored in a package or container and kept inside a covered, leakproof container that is identified as a container for the storage of medicines; and

(B) located so they are inaccessible to children.

**#20** (j) First aid supplies, storage. First aid supplies that are in a food establishment for the employees' use shall be:

(1) labeled as specified under subsection (a) of this section; and

(2) stored in a kit or a container that is located to prevent the contamination of food, equipment, utensils, and linens, and single-service and single-use articles.

(k) Other personal care items, storage. Except as specified in subsections (i)(2) and (j) of this section, employees shall store their personal care items in facilities as specified under §229.167(i)(2) of this title (relating to Physical Facilities).

**#20** (l) Storage and display, separation. Poisonous or toxic materials shall be stored and displayed for retail sale so they cannot contaminate food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles by:

(1) separating the poisonous or toxic materials by spacing or partitioning; and

(2) locating the poisonous or toxic materials in an area that is not above food, equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service or single-use articles.

§229.169. Mobile Food Establishments.

(a) Mobile food establishment provisions.

(1) General. Mobile food establishments shall comply with the requirements of these rules, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph and in paragraph (2) of this subsection. The regulatory authority may impose additional requirements to protect against health hazards related to the conduct of the food establishment as a mobile operation, may prohibit the sale of some or all potentially hazardous food, and when no health hazard will result, may waive or modify requirements of this rule relating to physical facilities, except those requirements as specified in paragraphs (5) and (6) of this subsection; subsection (c)(1)(A)-(E) of this section and §229.164(k)-(o) of this title (relating to Food). The regulatory authority may require a mobile food establishment operator to demonstrate that the vehicle is readily moveable.

(2) Restricted operation. Mobile food establishments that serve only food that is prepared, packaged in individual servings, transported and stored under conditions meeting the requirements of these sections, or beverages that are not potentially hazardous and are dispensed from covered urns or other protected equipment, need not comply with the requirements of these rules pertaining to the necessity of water and sewage systems nor to those requirements pertaining to the cleaning and sanitization of equipment and utensils if the required equipment for cleaning and sanitization exists at its central preparation facility.

(3) Single-service articles. Mobile food establishments shall provide only single service articles for use by the consumer.

(4) Existing refrigeration equipment. Existing refrigeration equipment will be upgraded to meet the 41 degree Fahrenheit requirement and countertop, under-counter and open-top refrigeration units shall be upgraded or replaced, as specified in §229.164(o)(6)(B)(ii) of this title.

#15

(5) Mobile water system materials, design, and operation. Mobile food establishment water systems shall meet the requirements of §229.166(i)(6) of this title (relating to Water, Plumbing, and Waste).

#14

(6) Mobile food establishment tank inlet. A mobile food establishment's water tank inlet shall be:

(A) 19.1 mm (3/4 inch) in inner diameter or less; and

(B) provided with a hose connection of a size or type that will prevent its use for any other service.

(7) Readily moveable. The regulatory authority may prohibit alteration, removal, attachments, placement or change in, under, or upon the mobile food establishment that would

#27

**§229.169(a)**

**§229.169(a)**

**#27** prevent or otherwise reduce ready mobility. A regulatory authority may require a mobile food establishment to come, on an annual basis, to a location designated by the regulatory authority as proof that the mobile food establishment is readily moveable. A regulatory authority may require that mobile food establishments that violate this section go for re-inspections to a location designated by the regulatory authority.

(8) Sewage, other liquid waste, and rainwater.

**#23** (A) Waste retention. If liquid waste results from operation of a mobile food establishment, the waste shall be stored in a permanently installed retention tank.

(B) Capacity and drainage. A sewage holding tank in a mobile food establishment shall be:

(i) sized at least 15% larger in capacity than the water supply tank;  
and

(ii) sloped to a drain that is 25 millimeters (1 inch) in inner diameter or greater, equipped with a shut-off valve.

(C) All connections on the vehicle for servicing the mobile food establishment waste disposal facilities shall be of a different size or type than those used for supplying potable water to the mobile food establishment.

(D) Discharge liquid waste shall not be discharged from the retention tank while the mobile food establishment is in motion.

(E) Flushing a waste retention tank. A tank for liquid waste retention shall be thoroughly flushed and drained in a sanitary manner.

**#23** (F) Removing mobile food establishment wastes. Sewage and other liquid wastes shall be removed from a mobile food establishment at an approved waste servicing area or by a sewage transport vehicle in such a way that a public health hazard or nuisance is not created.

(9) Mobile food establishment water and wastewater exemption.

(A) A roadside vendor that sells only prepackaged food is exempt from these rules pertaining to water and wastewater.

(B) A mobile food establishment that prepares food requiring no water for operations and no hand contact with food is exempt from these rules pertaining to water and wastewater if the required cleaning and sanitization equipment exist at its central preparation facility.

**§229.169(b)**

**§229.169(c)**

(b) Central preparation facility.

(1) Supplies, cleaning, and servicing operations. Mobile food establishments shall operate from a central preparation facility or other fixed food establishment and shall report to such location for supplies and for cleaning and servicing operations.

(2) Construction. The central preparation facility or other fixed food service establishment, used as a base of operation for mobile food establishments, shall be constructed and operated in compliance with the requirements of these rules.

(c) Servicing area and operations.

(1) Protection.

(A) A mobile food establishment servicing area shall be provided and shall include at least overhead protection for any supplying, cleaning, or servicing operation except those areas used only for the loading of water and/or the discharge of sewage and other liquid waste, through the use of a closed system of hoses, need not be provided with overhead protection.

(B) Within this servicing area, a location provided for the flushing and drainage of liquid wastes shall be separate from the location provided for water servicing and for the loading and unloading of food and related supplies.

(C) This servicing area will not be required where only packaged food is placed on the mobile food establishment or where mobile food establishments do not contain waste retention tanks.

(D) The surface of the servicing area shall be constructed of a smooth nonabsorbent material, such as concrete or machine-laid asphalt and shall be maintained in good repair, kept clean, and be graded to drain.

(E) Potable water servicing equipment shall be installed in the servicing area according to law and stored and handled in a way that protects the water and equipment from contamination.

(2) Construction exemption. The construction of the walls and ceilings of the servicing area is exempted from the provisions of §229.167(c)(1) of this title (relating to Physical Facilities).

**§229.170(a)**

**§229.170(f)**

§229.170. Temporary Food Establishments.

(a) General. A temporary food establishment shall comply with the requirements of these rules except as otherwise provided in this section. The regulatory authority may impose additional requirements to protect against health hazards related to the conduct of the temporary food establishment, may prohibit the sale of some or all potentially hazardous foods, and when no health hazard will result, may waive or modify requirements of these rules.

(b) Food temperatures. All food temperature requirements shall be met as contained in §229.164(k) - (o) of this title (relating to Food).

**#9**

(c) Ice. Ice that is consumed or that contacts food shall have been made under conditions meeting the requirements of these rules. The ice shall be obtained only in chipped, crushed, or cubed form and in single-use safe plastic or wet-strength paper bags filled and sealed at the point of manufacture. Ice for consumption shall be held in their bags until it is dispensed in a way that protects it from contamination.

(d) Equipment.

(1) Design and construction. Equipment and utensils shall be designed and constructed to be durable and to retain their characteristic qualities under normal use conditions.

(2) Location and installation. Equipment shall be located and installed and cleaned in a way that prevents food contamination and that also facilitates cleaning of the establishment.

**#15**

(3) Hot and cold holding equipment. Equipment for cooling or heating food, and holding cold or hot food shall be adequate in number and capacity to provide food temperatures as specified under §229.164(k) - (o) of this title.

(4) Protection from contamination. Food-contact surfaces of equipment shall be protected from contamination by consumers and other contamination sources. Where necessary to prevent contamination, effective shields for such equipment shall be provided.

(5) Alternative manual warewashing. Alternative manual warewashing equipment, such as receptacles that substitute for the compartments of a multi-compartment sink, may be used when there are special cleaning needs or constraints and the regulatory authority has approved the use of alternative equipment.

(e) Single-service articles. A temporary food establishment shall provide only single-service articles for use by the consumer.

**#14**

(f) Water. Water from an approved source shall be made available in a temporary food establishment for food preparation, handwashing, and for cleaning and sanitizing utensils and



**§229.170(f)**

**§229.170(k)**

equipment. Water need not be under pressure but shall come from approved sources which include: commercially bottled drinking water, closed portable water containers, enclosed vehicular water tanks, on-premise water storage tanks, or piping, tubing or hoses connected to an approved source.

#14

(g) Wet storage. Packaged food may not be stored in direct contact with ice or water if the food is subject to the entry of water because of the nature of its packaging, wrapping, or container or its positioning in the ice or water.

(h) Sewage. All waste water and sewage generated from the establishment shall be disposed of through an approved sanitary sewage system that is constructed, maintained and operated according to law.

#23

(i) Handwashing. Handwash facilities shall include an insulated container with a spigot that can be turned on to allow potable, clean, warm water to flow; a wastewater container; soap; disposable towels; and a waste receptacle. Handwash facilities are not required if the only food items offered are commercially pre-packaged foods that are dispensed in their original containers.

#16, #17

(j) Floors. If graded to drain, a floor may be concrete, machine-laid asphalt, dirt, or gravel if it is covered with mats, removable platforms, duckboards, or other suitable materials approved by the regulatory authority that are effectively treated to control dust and mud.

(k) Ceilings and outer openings of food preparation areas.

(1) Ceilings. Ceilings shall be made of wood, canvas, or other materials that protect the interior of the establishment from the weather, windblown dust, birds, and debris.

(2) Outer openings. The outer openings shall be protected against entry of insects and rodents by:

(A) 16 mesh to 25.4 millimeters (16 mesh to 1 inch) screens;

(B) properly designed and installed air curtains; or

(C) other effective means.

(3) Exclusion provision. Paragraph (2) of this subsection does not apply if flying insects and other pests are absent due to the location of the establishment or other limiting condition.

**§229.171(a)**

**§229.171(c)**

§229.171. Compliance and Enforcement.

(a) Use for intended purpose, public health protection.

(1) Safeguarding public health. The regulatory authority shall apply these rules to promote its underlying purpose, as specified in §229.161 of this title (relating to Purpose), of safeguarding public health and ensuring that food is safe, unadulterated, and honestly presented when offered to the consumer.

(2) Assessment of existing facilities. In enforcing the provisions of these rules, the regulatory authority shall assess existing facilities or equipment that were in use before the effective date of these rules based on the following considerations:

(A) whether the facilities or equipment are in good repair and capable of being maintained in a sanitary condition;

(B) whether food-contact surfaces comply with §229.165(a) of this title (relating to Equipment, Utensils, and Linens); and

(C) whether the capacities of cooling, heating, and holding equipment are sufficient to comply with §229.165(g)(1) of this title.

(b) Additional requirements, preventing health hazards, provision for conditions not addressed.

(1) Option to impose additional requirements. If necessary to protect against public health hazards or nuisances, the regulatory authority may impose specific requirements in addition to the requirements contained in these rules that are authorized by law.

(2) Required documentation. The regulatory authority shall document the conditions that necessitate the imposition of additional requirements and the underlying public health rationale. The documentation shall be provided to the permit applicant or permit holder and a copy shall be maintained in the regulatory authority's file for the food establishment.

(c) Variances.

(1) Modifications and waivers. The regulatory authority may grant a variance by modifying or waiving the requirements of these rules if in the opinion of the regulatory authority a health hazard or nuisance will not result from the variance. If a variance is granted, the regulatory authority shall retain the information specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection in its records for the food establishment.

(2) Documentation of proposed variance and justification. Before a variance from a requirement of these rules is approved, the information that shall be provided by the person

**§229.171(c)**

**§229.171(d)**

requesting the variance and retained in the regulatory authority's file on the food establishment includes:

(A) a statement of the proposed variance of the rule requirement citing relevant rule section numbers;

(B) an analysis of the rationale for how the potential public health hazards and nuisances addressed by the relevant rule sections will be alternatively addressed by the proposal; and

(C) a HACCP plan if required as specified in subsection (d)(1)(A) of this section that includes the information specified in subsection (d)(2)(A) of this section, as it is relevant to the variance requested.

(3) Conformance with approved procedures. If the regulatory authority grants a variance as specified in paragraph (1) of this subsection, or a HACCP plan is otherwise required as specified in subsection (d)(1) of this section, the food establishment shall:

#13

(A) comply with the HACCP plans and procedures that are submitted and approved as specified in subsection (d)(2) of this section as a basis for the modification or waiver; and

(B) maintain and provide to the regulatory authority, upon request, records specified in subsection (d)(2)(D) and (E) of this section that demonstrate that the following are routinely employed:

(i) procedures for monitoring critical control points;

(ii) monitoring of the critical control points;

(iii) verification of the effectiveness of an operation or process; and

(iv) necessary corrective actions if there is failure at a critical control point.

(d) HACCP plan requirements.

(1) When a HACCP plan is required.

(A) Before engaging in an activity that requires a HACCP plan, a food establishment shall submit to the regulatory authority for approval a properly prepared HACCP plan as specified under paragraph (2) of this subsection and the relevant provisions of these rules if:

**§229.171(d)**

**§229.171(d)**

(i) submission of a HACCP plan is required according to law;

(ii) a variance is required as specified under §§229.164(k)(1)(D)(iii) and (p)(1)(A)–(H), or 229.165(f)(10)(B) of this title; or

(iii) the regulatory authority determines that a food preparation or processing method requires a variance based on an inspectional finding or a variance request.

(B) A food establishment shall have a properly prepared HACCP plan as specified under §229.164(o)(2) of this title.

(2) Contents of a HACCP plan. For a food establishment that is required under paragraph (1) of this subsection to have a HACCP plan, the plan and specifications shall indicate:

(A) a categorization of the types of potentially hazardous foods that are specified in the menu such as soups and sauces, salads, and bulk, solid foods such as meat roasts, or of other foods that are specified by the regulatory authority;

(B) a flow diagram by specific food or category type identifying critical control points and providing information on the following:

(i) ingredients, materials, and equipment used in the preparation of that food; and

(ii) formulations or recipes that delineate methods and procedural control measures that address the food safety concerns involved;

(C) food employee and supervisory training plan that addresses the food safety issues of concern;

(D) a statement of standard operating procedures for the plan under consideration including clearly identifying:

(i) each critical control point;

(ii) the critical limits for each critical control point;

(iii) the method and frequency for monitoring and controlling each critical control point by the food employee designated by the person in charge;

(iv) the method and frequency for the person in charge to routinely verify that the food employee is following standard operating procedures and monitoring critical control points;

**§229.171(d)**

**§229.171(g)**

(v) action to be taken by the person in charge if the critical limits for each critical control point are not met; and

(vi) records to be maintained by the person in charge to demonstrate that the HACCP plan is properly operated and managed; and

(E) additional scientific data or other information, as required by the regulatory authority, supporting the determination that food safety is not compromised by the proposal.

(e) Confidentiality, trade secrets. The regulatory authority shall treat as confidential in accordance with the requirements of the Public Information Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 552, information that meets the criteria specified in law for a trade secret and is contained on inspection report forms and in the plans and specifications submitted as specified in subsection (d)(2) of this section.

(f) Permit requirement, prerequisite for operation. A person may not operate a food establishment without a valid permit or license to operate issued by the regulatory authority.

#27

(g) Conditions of retention, responsibilities of the permit holder. Upon acceptance of the permit issued by the regulatory authority, the permit holder in order to retain the permit shall:

(1) post the permit in a location in the food establishment that is conspicuous to consumers;

(2) comply with the provisions of these rules including the conditions of a granted variance as specified under subsection (c)(3) of this section;

(3) if a food establishment is required under subsection (d)(1) of this section to operate under a HACCP plan, comply with the plan as specified under subsection (c)(3) of this section;

(4) immediately contact the regulatory authority to report an illness of a food employee as specified under §229.163(d)(5) of this title (relating to Management and Personnel);

(5) immediately discontinue operations and notify the regulatory authority if an imminent health hazard may exist as specified under subsection (k) of this section;

(6) allow representatives of the regulatory authority access to the food establishment as specified under subsection (i)(1) of this section;

(7) except as specified under paragraph (8) of this section, replace existing facilities and equipment specified in subsection (a) of this section with facilities and equipment that comply with these rules if:

**§229.171(g)**

(A) the regulatory authority directs the replacement because the facilities and equipment constitute a public health hazard or nuisance or no longer comply with the criteria upon which the facilities and equipment were accepted;

(B) the regulatory authority directs the replacement of the facilities and equipment because of a change of ownership; or

(C) the facilities and equipment are replaced in the normal course of operation;

(8) upgrade or replace countertop, under-counter and open-top refrigeration units located in the food preparation area as specified under §229.164(o)(6)(B)(ii) of this title, if the circumstances specified under paragraph (7)(A)-(C) of this subsection do not occur first;

(9) comply with directives of the regulatory authority including time frames for corrective actions specified in inspection reports, notices, orders, warnings, and other directives issued by the regulatory authority in regard to the permit holder's food establishment or in response to community emergencies;

(10) accept notices issued and served by the regulatory authority according to law; and

(11) be subject to the administrative, civil, injunctive, and criminal remedies authorized in law for failure to comply with these rules or a directive of the regulatory authority, including time frames for corrective actions specified in inspection reports, notices, orders, warnings, and other directives.

(h) Inspection frequency, performance-based and risk based. The regulatory authority should inspect each food establishment at least once every six months. If the regulatory authority cannot meet this frequency, inspection frequency shall be prioritized based upon assessment of a food establishment's history of compliance with these rules and the potential for causing foodborne illness by evaluating:

(1) past performance, for nonconformance with these rules or HACCP plan requirements that are critical;

(2) past performance, for numerous or repeat violations of these rules or HACCP plan requirements that are noncritical;

(3) past performance, for complaints investigated and found to be valid;

(4) the hazards associated with the particular foods that are prepared, stored, or served;

**§229.171(h)**

**§229.171(i)**

(5) the type of operation including the methods and extent of food storage, preparation, and service;

(6) the number of people served;

(7) whether the population served is a highly susceptible population; and

(8) any other risk factor deemed relevant to the operation by the regulatory authority.

(i) Competency and access.

(1) Competency of inspectors. An individual conducting inspections of retail food establishments should be a Registered Professional Sanitarian in Texas or a Sanitarian-in-Training in Texas, as defined in §265.142 of this title (relating to Definitions), or should meet the FDA Voluntary National Retail Food Regulatory Program Standards basic curriculum and field training elements in order to:

(A) assure application of basic scientific principles, including HACCP principles of food safety, during inspections;

(B) properly conduct foodborne illness investigations;

(C) assure uniformity in the interpretations of these rules; and

(D) assure fair and uniform enforcement of these rules.

(2) Access allowed at reasonable times after due notice. After the regulatory authority presents official credentials and provides notice of the purpose of, and an intent to conduct, an inspection, the person in charge shall allow the regulatory authority to determine if the food establishment is in compliance with these rules by allowing access to the establishment, allowing inspection, and providing information and records specified in these rules and to which the regulatory authority is entitled according to law, during the food establishment's hours of operation and other reasonable times.

(3) Refusal, notification of right to access, and final request for access. If a person denies access to the regulatory authority, the regulatory authority shall:

(A) inform the person that:

(i) the food establishment is required to allow access to the regulatory authority as specified under this subsection;

**§229.171(i)**

**§229.171(i)**

(ii) access is a condition of the acceptance and retention of a food establishment permit to operate as specified under subsection (g)(6) of this section; and

(iii) if access is denied, an order issued by the appropriate authority allowing access, hereinafter referred to as an inspection warrant, may be obtained according to law; and

(B) make a final request for access.

(4) Refusal, reporting. If after the regulatory authority presents credentials and provides notice as specified under paragraph (2) of this subsection, explains the authority upon which access is requested, and makes a final request for access as specified in paragraph (3) of this subsection, the person in charge continues to refuse access, the regulatory authority shall provide details of the denial of access on an inspection report form.

(5) Inspection warrant to gain access. If denied access to a food establishment for an authorized purpose and after complying with paragraph (2) of this subsection, the regulatory authority may issue, or apply for the issuance of, an inspection warrant to gain access as provided in law.

(j) Report of findings.

(1) Documenting information and observations. The regulatory authority shall document on an inspection report form:

(A) administrative information about the food establishment's legal identity, street and mailing addresses, inspection date, and other information such as status of the permit, and personnel certificates that may be required; and

(B) specific factual observations of violative conditions or other deviations from these rules that require correction by the permit holder including:

(i) failure of the person in charge to demonstrate the knowledge of foodborne illness prevention, application of HACCP principles, and the requirements of these rules specified under §229.163(b) of this title;

(ii) failure of food employees and the person in charge to demonstrate their knowledge of their responsibility to report a disease or medical condition as specified under §§229.163(d)(4)(A)-(B) and (d)(5) of this title;

(iii) nonconformance with critical items of these rules;

(iv) failure of the appropriate food employees to demonstrate their knowledge of, and ability to perform in accordance with, the procedural, monitoring,



**§229.171(i)**

**§229.171(i)**

verification, and corrective action practices required by the regulatory authority as specified under subsection (c)(3) of this section;

(v) failure of the person in charge to provide records required by the regulatory authority for determining conformance with a HACCP plan as specified under subsection (d)(2)(D)(vi) of this section; and

(vi) nonconformance with critical limits of a HACCP plan; and

(C) a summary of the inspectional findings that totals weighted demerit values for the inspection items.

(2) Specifying time frame for corrections. The regulatory authority shall specify on the inspection report form the time frame for correction of the violations as specified under subsections (k)(1), (l)(1), and (m) of this section.

(3) Issuing report and obtaining acknowledgment of receipt. At the conclusion of the inspection and according to law, the regulatory authority shall provide a copy of the completed inspection report and the notice to correct violations to the permit holder or to the person in charge, and request a signed acknowledgment of receipt.

(4) Refusal to sign acknowledgment. The regulatory authority shall:

(A) inform a person who declines to sign an acknowledgment of receipt of inspectional findings as specified in paragraph (3) of this subsection that:

(i) an acknowledgment of receipt is not an agreement with findings;

(ii) refusal to sign an acknowledgment of receipt will not affect the permit holder's obligation to correct the violations noted in the inspection report within the time frames specified; and

(iii) a refusal to sign an acknowledgment of receipt is noted in the inspection report and conveyed to the regulatory authority's historical record for the food establishment; and

(B) make a final request that the person in charge sign an acknowledgment receipt of inspectional findings.

(5) Public information. Except as specified in subsection (e) of this section, the regulatory authority shall treat the inspection report as a public document and shall make it available for disclosure to a person who requests it as provided in law.

**§229.171(j)**

**§229.171(j)**

(6) Inspection reports. For the purposes of Chapter 437, Texas Health and Safety Code, the department adopts the Retail Food Establishment Inspection Report form as specified in the following figure:

Figure: 25 TAC, §229.171(j)(6)

# Retail Food Establishment Inspection Report

<b>San Code</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Time In</b>	<b>Time Out</b>	<b>Establishment Number</b>	<b>Permit Number</b>	<b>Risk Category</b>
<b>Purpose of Inspection:</b> 1-Compliance                      2-Routine                      3-Field Investigation                      4-Visit                      5-Other						
Establishment:				Owner:		
Physical Address:				Zip:	Phone: (    )	
OUT 5 Pts	IN	NA	NO	CO S	<b>Food Temperature/Time Requirements</b>	
					Violations Require Immediate Corrective Action                      Remarks	
					1. Proper Cooling for Cooked/Prepared Food	
					2. Cold Hold (41 degrees Fahrenheit /45 degrees Fahrenheit)	
					3. Hot Hold (135 degrees Fahrenheit)	
					4. Proper Cooking Temperatures	
					5. Rapid Reheating (165 degrees Fahrenheit in 2 Hrs)	
Item/Location/Temperature						
OUT 4 Pts	IN	NA	NO	CO S	<b>Personnel/Handling/Source Requirements</b>	
					Violations Require Immediate Corrective Action                      Remarks	
					6. Personnel with Infections Restricted/Excluded	
					7. Proper/Adequate Handwashing	
					8. Good Hygienic Practices (Eating/Drinking/Smoking/Other)	
					9. Approved Source/Labeling	
					10. Sound Condition	
					11. Proper Handling of Ready-To-Eat Foods	
					12. Cross-contamination of Raw/Cooked Foods/Other	
					13. Approved Systems (HACCP Plans/Time as Public Health Control)	
					14. Water Supply – Approved Sources/Sufficient Capacity/Hot and Cold Under Pressure	
OUT 3 Pts	IN	NA	NO	CO S	<b>Facility and Equipment Requirements</b>	
					Violations Require Immediate Correction, Not To Exceed 10 Days                      Remarks	
					15. Equipment Adequate to Maintain Product Temperature	
					16. Handwash Facilities Adequate and Accessible	
					17. Handwash Facilities with Soap and Towels	
					18. No Evidence of Insect Contamination	
					19. No Evidence of Rodents/Other Animals	
					20. Toxic Items Properly Labeled/Stored/Used	
					21. Manual/Mechanical Warewashing and Sanitizing at (    )ppm/temperature	
					22. Manager Demonstration of Knowledge/Certified Food Manager	
					23. Approved Sewage/Wastewater Disposal System, Proper Disposal	
					24. Thermometers Provided/Accurate/Properly Calibrated (±2 degrees Fahrenheit)	
					25. Food Contact Surfaces of Equipment and Utensils Cleaned/Sanitized/Good Repair	
					26. Posting of Consumer Advisories (Heimlich/Disclosure/Reminder/Buffer Plate)	
					27. Food Establishment Permit	
Subtotal	<b>Other Violations</b> – Require Corrective Action, Not to Exceed 90 Days or the Next Inspection, Whichever Comes First					
5pt						
4pt						
3pt						
Total	Inspected by:			Print:		
F/U Yes/ No	Received by:			Print:		Title:

**Corrective Actions to Ensure Safe Food**

**Item No.**

**1 Cooling**

- PHF/TCS\* food cooled from 135° F to 70° F more than 2 hours OR 135° F to 41° F (45° F) more than 6 hours; OR prepared food cooled to 41° F (45° F) more than 4 hours:

*Action: Voluntary destruction, rapid reheating of cooked foods if less than 4 hours*

**2 Cold Hold**

- PHF/TCS food held above 41° F (45° F) more than 4 hours:

*Action: Voluntary destruction*

- PHF/TCS food held above 41° F (45° F) less than 4 hours:

*Action: Rapid cool (e.g. ice bath)*

**3 Hot Hold**

- PHF/TCS food held below 135° F more than 4 hours:

*Action: Voluntary destruction*

- PHF/TCS food held below 135° F less than 4 hours:

*Action: Rapid reheat to 165° F or more*

**4 Cooking**

- PHF/TCS food undercooked:

*Action: Re-cook to proper temperature*

**5 Rapid Reheating**

- Cold PHF/TCS food improperly reheated:

*Action: Reheat rapidly to 165° F*

**7 Handwashing**

- Food employees observed not washing hands:

*Action: Instruct employees to wash hands as specified in the Rules.*

**9, 10 Approved Source/Sound Condition**

- Foods from unapproved sources/unsound condition:

*Action: Voluntary destruction*

**11 Proper Handling of Ready-to-Eat Foods**

- Employee did not properly wash and sanitize hands before touching ready-to-eat food with bare hands:

*Action: Voluntary destruction*

**12 Cross-Contamination of Raw/Cooked Foods**

- Ready-To-Eat food contaminated by raw PHF/TCS food:

*Action: Voluntary destruction of ready-to-eat foods*

**14 Water Supply**

- Facility does not have water for washing hands, preparing food, or cleaning equipment/utensils:

*Action: Voluntary suspension of food preparation*

\*Potentially Hazardous Food (PHF) / Time/Temperature Control for Safety (TCS)

(k) Imminent health hazard.

(1) Ceasing operations and reporting.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, a food establishment shall immediately discontinue operations and notify the regulatory authority if an imminent health hazard may exist because of an emergency such as a fire, flood, extended interruption of electrical or water service, sewage backup, misuse of poisonous or toxic materials, onset of an apparent foodborne illness outbreak, gross insanitary occurrence or condition, or other circumstance that may endanger public health.

(B) A permit holder need not discontinue operations in an area of an establishment that is unaffected by the imminent health hazard.

(2) Resumption of operations. If operations are discontinued as specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection or otherwise according to law, the permit holder shall obtain approval from the regulatory authority before resuming operations.

(l) Critical violations, time frame for correction.

(1) Timely correction.

(A) Except as specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, the food establishment shall at the time of inspection implement immediate corrective actions of a critical violation of these rules and implement corrective actions for a HACCP plan provision that is not in compliance with its critical limit.

(B) Considering the nature of the potential hazard involved and the complexity of the corrective action needed, the regulatory authority may agree to or specify a longer time frame, not to exceed 10 calendar days after the inspection, for the food establishment to correct critical rule violations or HACCP plan deviations.

**§229.171(i)**

**§229.171(n)**

(2) Verification and documentation of correction.

(A) After observing at the time of inspection a correction of a critical violation or deviation, the regulatory authority shall enter the violation and information about the corrective action on the inspection report.

(B) As specified under paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection, after receiving notification that the food establishment has corrected a critical violation or HACCP plan deviation, or at the end of the specified period of time, the regulatory authority shall verify correction of the violation, document the information on an inspection report, and enter the report in the regulatory authority's records.

(C) When the total cumulative demerit value of an establishment exceeds 30 demerits, the establishment shall initiate immediate corrective action on all identified critical violations and shall initiate corrective action on all other violations within 48 hours. One or more reinspections shall be conducted at reasonable time intervals to assure correction.

(D) In the case of temporary food establishments, all critical violations must be corrected immediately and other violations must be corrected within 24 hours or sooner if required by the regulatory authority. If violations are not corrected, the establishment shall immediately cease food operations until authorized to resume by the regulatory authority.

(m) Other violations, time frame for correction.

(1) Time frame. Except as specified in paragraph (2) of this section, the food establishment shall correct other violations by a date and time agreed to or specified by the regulatory authority but no later than 90 calendar days after the inspection.

(2) Extension of compliance schedule. The regulatory authority may approve a compliance schedule that extends beyond the time limits specified under paragraph (1) of this subsection if a written schedule of compliance is submitted by the food establishment and no health hazard exists or will result from allowing an extended schedule for compliance.

(n) Examination and detention of food. The regulatory authority may examine and collect samples of food as often as necessary for the enforcement of these rules. A receipt for samples shall be issued by the regulatory authority. The department shall, upon written notice to the owner or person in charge specifying the reason therefore, place under detention any food which it has probable cause to believe is adulterated or misbranded in accordance with the provisions of the Texas Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 431.

(o) Investigation and control.

(1) Obtaining information: personal history of illness, medical examination, and specimen analysis. The regulatory authority shall act when it has reasonable cause to believe that a food employee has possibly transmitted disease; may be infected with a disease in a communicable form that is transmissible through food; may be a carrier of infectious agents that cause a disease that is transmissible through food; or is affected with a boil, an infected wound, or acute respiratory infection, by:

(A) securing a confidential medical history of the employee suspected of transmitting disease or making other investigations as deemed appropriate; and

(B) requiring appropriate medical examinations, including collection of specimens for laboratory analysis, of a suspected employee and other employees.

(2) Restriction or exclusion of food employee, or summary suspension of permit. Based on the findings of an investigation related to a food employee who is suspected of being infected or diseased, the regulatory authority may issue an order to the suspected food employee or permit holder instituting one or more of the following control measures:

(A) restricting the food employee;

(B) excluding the food employee; or

(C) closing the food establishment by summarily suspending a permit to operate in accordance with law.

(3) Restriction or exclusion order: warning or hearing not required, information required in order. Based on the findings of the investigation as specified in paragraph (1) of this subsection and to control disease transmission, the regulatory authority may issue an order of restriction or exclusion to a suspected food employee or the permit holder without prior warning, notice of a hearing, or a hearing if the order:

(A) states the reasons for the restriction or exclusion that is ordered;

(B) states the evidence that the food employee or permit holder shall provide in order to demonstrate that the reasons for the restriction or exclusion are eliminated;

(C) states that the suspected food employee or the permit holder may request an appeal hearing by submitting a timely request as provided in law; and

(D) provides the name and address of the regulatory authority representative to whom a request for an appeal hearing may be made.

**§229.171(o)**

**§229.171(p)**

(4) Release of food employee from restriction or exclusion. The regulatory authority shall release a food employee from restriction or exclusion according to Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 438, §438.033, and the following conditions:

(A) a food employee who was infected with *Salmonella typhi* if the food employee's stools are negative for *S. typhi* based on testing of at least three consecutive stool specimen cultures that are taken:

- (i) not earlier than one month after onset;
- (ii) at least 48 hours after discontinuance of antibiotics; and
- (iii) at least 24 hours apart;

(B) if one of the cultures taken as specified in subparagraph (A) of this paragraph is positive, repeat cultures are taken at intervals of one month until at least three consecutive negative stool specimen cultures are obtained;

(C) a food employee who was infected with *Shigella* spp. or Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* if the employee's stools are negative for *Shigella* spp. or Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* based on testing of two consecutive stool specimen cultures that are taken:

- (i) not earlier than 48 hours after discontinuance of antibiotics; and
- (ii) at least 24 hours apart; and

(D) a food employee who was infected with hepatitis A virus if:

- (i) symptoms cease; or
- (ii) at least two blood tests show falling liver enzymes.

(p) Reporting of communicable diseases.

(1) Who shall report. Certain persons, as required in §97.2 of this title (relating to Who Shall Report), shall report certain confirmed and suspected foodborne diseases.

(2) What to report. Confirmed and suspected cases of the following diseases, including, but not limited to the following, are reportable: botulism; campylobacteriosis; cryptosporidiosis; *Escherichia coli* 0157:H7; hepatitis A, acute viral; listeriosis; salmonellosis; shigellosis; trichinosis; and *Vibrio* infection.



**§229.171(p)**

**§229.171(p)**

(3) When to report. Reporting of communicable diseases shall be done in accordance with §97.4 of this title (relating to When To Report a Condition or Isolate; Where to Submit an Isolate; Where to Report a Condition or Isolate).

(4) Where to report. Persons required to report communicable diseases shall report to the local health authority, or in the case where there is no local health authority, the report shall be made to the department's Regional Director as required in §97.5 of this title (relating to Where To Report a Condition or Isolate; Where To Submit an Isolate).

(5) Reporting and other duties of local health authorities and regional directors. Local health authorities and regional directors shall report communicable diseases to the department as provided for in §97.6 of this title (relating to Reporting and Other Duties of Local Health Authorities and Regional Directors).

**§229.173(a)**

**§229.173(c)**

§229.173. Heimlich Maneuver Poster.

(a) Purpose. The purpose of this section is to establish the requirements for signs depicting the Heimlich Maneuver for dislodging an obstruction from a choking person.

#26

(b) Placement. All food establishments at which space for eating is designed or designated shall post the sign in a place conspicuous to employees or customers.

(c) Specifications. The sign shall meet the following requirements:

(1) the sign shall be printed on white paper and shall be no smaller than 11 inches wide by 17 inches long;

(2) the sign shall be printed in English and Spanish and in at least two conspicuous contrasting colors. Major title and figure blocks shall be in contrasting color to remaining copy blocks;

(3) major headings shall be a minimum Bengeat Bold 72 point or equivalent;

(4) subheadings shall be a minimum Bengeat Bold Italic 60 point or equivalent;

(5) remaining subheadings shall be a minimum Bengeat Bold 24 point or equivalent; and

(6) body copy shall be Helios Bold 14 point or equivalent.

**§229.174(a)**

**§229.174(h)**

§229.174. Bed and Breakfast Extended Establishments.

(a) General. Bed and breakfast extended establishments shall comply with these minimum requirements of this section.

(b) Food supplies. Food shall be obtained from approved sources, shall be in sound condition, and be safe for human consumption. #9, #10

(c) Food preparation and protection.

(1) Food preparation and protection. Food shall be prepared and protected in accordance with these rules.

(2) Temperature requirements. All food temperature requirements shall be met as contained in §229.164(k) - (o) of this title (relating to Food).

(d) Cleaning and sanitizing.

(1) Manual. A three compartment sink shall be used if washing, rinsing and sanitizing of utensils and equipment is done manually; or a two compartment sink may be utilized if single service tableware is provided, and if an approved detergent sanitizer is used. #21

(2) Mechanical. Cleaning and sanitizing may be done by spray-type or immersion dishwashing machines or by any other type of machine or device if it is demonstrated that it thoroughly cleans and sanitizes equipment and utensils either by chemical or mechanical sanitization.

(e) Personal hygiene. Employees shall conform to good hygienic practices as required in these rules. #8

(f) Employee restrooms. A restroom shall be available for use by employees. #23

(g) Equipment and utensil design and construction. All equipment and utensils shall be constructed of safe materials and maintained in good repair. #25

(h) Handsinks.

(1) Location. An accessible and conveniently located handwash sink shall be provided in or immediately adjacent to food preparation areas. #16

(2) Intended use. Handsink(s) shall be used for no other purpose other than handwashing. #8

**§229.174(i)**

**§229.174(n)**

- #25**            (i) Food-contact surfaces. All food contact surfaces, counters, or work surfaces in the establishment shall be smooth, non-absorbent and easily cleanable.
- (j) Insect proof/rodent proof.
- (1) Construction. Food service preparation and storage areas shall be constructed and maintained to prevent the entry of pests and other vermin.
- #20**            (2) Chemical control. Pesticides and rodenticides shall be applied according to law.
- #15**            (k) Equipment. Equipment shall be provided to maintain potentially hazardous foods at the temperatures required by these rules.
- (1) Garbage receptacles. Impervious receptacles shall be provided for storage of garbage and refuse.
- #23**            (m) Sewage. Sewage shall be disposed through an approved facility that is:
- (1) a public sewage treatment plant; or
- (2) an individual sewage disposal system that is sized, constructed, maintained, and operated according to law.
- #14**            (n) Water supply. Hot and cold water under pressure shall be provided and shall be from an approved source.

**§229.175(a)**

**§229.175(h)**

§229.175. Outfitter Operations.

(a) General. Requirements in this section are specific for Outfitter Operations. The regulatory authority may impose additional requirements to protect against health hazards that may be specific to these operations.

(b) Food supplies. Food supplies, including ice, shall be obtained from approved sources. No home prepared products shall be offered. #9, #10

(c) Food temperatures. All food temperature requirements shall be met as contained in §229.164(k) - (o) of this title (relating to Food).

(d) Warewashing. Alternative manual warewashing equipment, such as receptacles that substitute for the compartments of a multi-compartment sink, may be used for washing and sanitizing utensils when approved by the regulatory authority. Outfitters without effective facilities for cleaning and sanitizing tableware shall only provide single-service articles for use by food employees and consumers. #21

(e) Ice usage. Ice that is used for cooling food may not be used for human consumption. #10

(f) Potable water. Potable water shall be used on excursions for food preparation, handwashing, and for cleaning and sanitizing utensils and equipment. #14

(g) Handwashing. Handwash facilities shall include an insulated container with a spigot that can be turned on to allow potable, clean, warm water to flow; a wastewater container; soap; disposable towels; and a waste receptacle. Handwash facilities are not required if the only food items offered are commercially prepackaged foods that are dispensed in their original containers. #16

(h) Equipment. All equipment and utensils intended for food contact shall be approved for food use. #25

ANNEX  
 NUMERICALLY SEQUENTIAL INDEX BY PARAGRAPH

§229.161 Purpose ..... 1

§229.162 Definitions ..... 1

§229.163 Management and Personnel .....20

    (a) Responsibility, assignment .....20

    (b) Knowledge, demonstration .....20

        (1) Complying with rules.....20

        (2) Being a certified food protection manager.....20

        (3) Responding correctly to inspector’s questions .....20

    (c) Duties, person in charge.....22

        (1) Food establishment operations not conducted in a private home .....22

        (2) Persons unnecessary to the operation not allowed.....22

        (3) Employees and other persons comply with these rules .....22

        (4) Employees are effectively cleaning their hands.....22

        (5) Employees are visibly observing received foods.....22

        (6) Employees are properly cooking potentially hazardous food.....22

        (7) Employees are using proper methods to rapidly cool  
 potentially hazardous food.....22

        (8) Consumers who order raw or partially cooked foods of animal  
 origin are informed .....22

        (9) Employees are properly sanitizing cleaned multiuse equipment.....23

        (10) Consumers are notified to use clean tableware.....23

        (11) Employees are preventing cross-contamination .....23

        (12) Employees are properly trained in food safety .....23

    (d) Disease or medical condition .....23

        (1) Responsibility of the person in charge to require  
 reporting by food employees and applicants .....23

        (2) Exclusions and restrictions .....25

        (3) Removal of exclusions and restrictions .....26

        (4) Responsibility of a food employee or an applicant to  
 to report to the person in charge .....28

    (e) Hands and arms, clean condition .....28

    (f) Hands and arms cleaning procedure .....28

        (1) Food employees shall clean their hands and exposed  
 portions of their arms for at least 20 seconds .....28

        (2) Food employees shall use the following cleaning procedure .....28

        (3) Food employees shall pay particular attention to the areas  
 underneath the fingernails.....28

        (4) An automatic handwashing facility may be used .....29

    (g) Special handwash procedures .....29

(h)	When to wash .....	29
	(1) After touching bare human body parts other than hands .....	29
	(2) After using the toilet room .....	29
	(3) After caring for or handling service animals or aquatic animals .....	29
	(4) After coughing, sneezing, using a handkerchief or disposable tissue, using tobacco, eating, or drinking.....	29
	(5) After handling soiled equipment or utensils .....	29
	(6) As often as necessary to remove soil and contamination .....	29
	(7) When switching between working with raw food and working with ready-to-eat food.....	29
	(8) Before donning gloves for working with food.....	29
	(9) After engaging in other activities that contaminate the hands.....	29
(i)	Where to wash.....	29
(j)	Hand sanitizers.....	29
	(1) A hand sanitizer and a chemical hand sanitizing solution shall.....	30
	(2) If a hand sanitizer or a chemical hand sanitizing solution used as a hand dip does not meet criteria.....	30
	(3) A chemical hand sanitizing solution used as a hand dip.....	30
(k)	Fingernail maintenance .....	30
	(1) Food employees shall keep their fingernails trimmed .....	31
	(2) A food employee may not wear fingernail polish.....	31
(l)	Jewelry prohibition .....	31
(m)	Outer clothing, clean condition.....	31
(n)	Eating, drinking, or using tobacco .....	31
	(1) An employee shall eat, drink, or use tobacco in designated areas .....	31
	(2) A food employee may drink from a closed beverage container .....	31
(o)	Discharges from the eyes, nose, and mouth.....	31
(p)	Hair restraints, effectiveness .....	31
	(1) Food employees shall wear hair restraints .....	31
	(2) Food employees who are not required to wear hair restraints .....	32
(q)	Handling prohibition.....	32
	(1) Food employees may not handle animals that may be present.....	32
	(2) Food employees with assistance animals and fish in aquariums .....	32
§229.164 Food .....		33
(a)	Condition safe, unadulterated, and honestly presented.....	33
(b)	Approved sources.....	33
	(1) Compliance with food law .....	33
	(2) Food in a hermetically sealed container.....	34
	(3) Fluid milk and milk products .....	34
	(4) Fish.....	34
	(5) Molluscan shellfish .....	34
	(6) Wild mushrooms .....	35
	(7) Exotic animals and game animals.....	35
(c)	Specifications for receiving .....	37
	(1) Temperature .....	37

	(2)	Additives.....	38
	(3)	Shell eggs.....	38
	(4)	Eggs and milk products, pasteurized .....	38
	(5)	Package integrity.....	38
	(6)	Ice.....	38
	(7)	Shucked shellfish, packaging and identification.....	38
	(8)	Shellstock identification.....	39
	(9)	Shellstock, condition.....	40
	(10)	Juice treated .....	40
(d)		Molluscan shellfish, maintaining identification.....	40
	(1)	Molluscan shellfish may not be removed from container.....	40
	(2)	Shellstock may be removed from container for display .....	40
	(3)	Shucked shellfish may be removed from container for display.....	41
	(4)	Label information for shucked shellfish removed from container.....	41
	(5)	Shellstock, tags .....	41
(e)		Preventing contamination by employees .....	42
	(1)	Preventing contamination from hands .....	42
	(2)	Preventing contamination when tasting .....	43
(f)		Preventing food and ingredient contamination.....	43
	(1)	General.....	43
	(2)	Packaged and unpackaged food - separation, packaging, and segregation .....	43
	(3)	Food storage containers, identified with common name of food.....	45
	(4)	Pasteurized eggs, substitute for shell eggs for certain recipes .....	45
	(5)	Protection from unapproved additives .....	45
	(6)	Washing fruits and vegetables .....	46
(g)		Preventing contamination from ice used as a coolant.....	46
	(1)	Ice used as exterior coolant, prohibited as ingredient.....	46
	(2)	Storage or display of food in contact with water or ice .....	46
(h)		Preventing contamination from equipment, utensils, and linens .....	46
	(1)	Food contact with equipment and utensils.....	46
	(2)	In-use utensils, between-use storage.....	47
	(3)	Linens and napkins, use limitation.....	47
	(4)	Wiping cloths, use limitation .....	47
	(5)	Gloves, use limitation .....	48
	(6)	Using clean tableware for second portions and refills .....	48
	(7)	Refilling returnables.....	49
(i)		Preventing contamination from the premises .....	49
	(1)	Food Storage .....	49
	(2)	Food storage, prohibited areas .....	49
	(3)	Vended potentially hazardous food, original container .....	50
	(4)	Food preparation .....	50
(j)		Preventing contamination by consumers .....	50
	(1)	Food display.....	50
	(2)	Condiments, protection.....	50
	(3)	Consumer self-service operations .....	50



	(4)	Returned food and reservice of food.....	51
	(5)	Preventing contamination from other sources .....	52
(k)		Cooking.....	52
	(1)	Raw animal foods .....	52
	(2)	Microwave cooking .....	55
	(3)	Plant food cooking for hot holding .....	55
(l)		Freezing.....	55
	(1)	Parasite destruction .....	55
	(2)	Tuna species served or sold without freezing .....	56
	(3)	Records, creation and retention.....	56
(m)		Reheating .....	56
	(1)	Preparation for immediate service .....	56
	(2)	Reheating for hot holding .....	56
(n)		Treating juice .....	57
	(1)	Juice shall be treated under a HACCP plan .....	57
	(2)	Juice shall be labeled if not treated .....	57
(o)		Temperature and time control.....	57
	(1)	Frozen food .....	57
	(2)	Potentially hazardous food, slacking .....	57
	(3)	Thawing .....	57
	(4)	Cooling.....	58
	(5)	Cooling methods .....	59
	(6)	Potentially hazardous food, hot and cold holding.....	60
	(7)	Ready-to-eat potentially hazardous food, date marking .....	60
	(8)	Ready-to-eat potentially hazardous food, disposition.....	62
	(9)	Time as a public health control .....	63
(p)		Specialized processing methods .....	63
	(1)	Variance requirement.....	63
	(2)	Clostridium botulinum controls, reduced oxygen packaging, criteria.....	64
(q)		Food identity, accurate representation .....	66
	(1)	Standards of identity .....	66
	(2)	Honestly presented.....	66
(r)		Labeling .....	66
	(1)	Food labels .....	66
	(2)	Other forms of information.....	67
(s)		Consumer advisory .....	68
	(1)	Permit holder shall inform consumer of increased risk of consuming raw or undercooked animal food .....	68
	(2)	Disclosure shall include a description and identification .....	68
	(3)	Reminder shall include a footnote regarding safety and risk.....	68
(t)		Disposition, contaminated food .....	68
	(1)	Unsafe, adulterated, or not honestly presented food.....	68
	(2)	Food from unapproved source .....	69
	(3)	Ready-to-eat food contaminated by restricted or excluded employee.....	69
	(4)	Food contaminated by food employees or consumers.....	69
(u)		Additional safeguards, requirements for food establishments	

	serving highly susceptible populations .....	69
	(1) Criteria that shall apply to juice .....	69
	(2) Pasteurized shell eggs or egg products shall be substituted.....	69
	(3) Foods that shall not be served.....	69
	(4) Food employees may not contact ready-to-eat food .....	70
	(5) Time only, as the public health control, may not be used for raw eggs.....	70
	(6) Requirements for using raw eggs.....	70
	(7) Food may be re-served.....	71
	(8) Food may not be re-served under the following conditions .....	71
(v)	Donation of foods .....	71
	(1) Previous service .....	71
	(2) Potentially hazardous foods .....	71
	(3) Labeling .....	71
	(4) Shelf life.....	71
	(5) Damaged foods .....	71
	(6) Distressed foods .....	72
§229.165	Equipment, Utensils, and Linens .....	73
(a)	Multiuse materials.....	73
	(1) Characteristics.....	73
	(2) Cast iron, use limitation .....	73
	(3) Lead in ceramic, china, and crystal utensils, use limitation.....	73
	(4) Copper, use limitation.....	74
	(5) Galvanized metal, use limitation.....	74
	(6) Sponges, use limitation.....	74
	(7) Lead in pewter alloys, use limitation .....	74
	(8) Lead in solder and flux, use limitation .....	74
	(9) Wood, use limitation.....	74
	(10) Nonstick coatings, use limitation.....	75
	(11) Nonfood-contact surfaces .....	75
(b)	Single-service and single-use, characteristics.....	75
	(1) Prohibitions of use .....	75
	(2) Requirements .....	75
(c)	Durability and strength .....	75
	(1) Equipment and utensils.....	76
	(2) Food temperature measuring devices.....	76
(d)	Cleanability.....	76
	(1) Food-contact surfaces .....	76
	(2) Exemption for cooking oil storage tanks and lines.....	76
	(3) Cleaned in place (CIP) equipment .....	76
	(4) "V" threads, use limitation .....	77
	(5) Hot oil filtering equipment.....	77
	(6) Can openers.....	77
	(7) Nonfood-contact surfaces .....	77
	(8) Kick plates, removable.....	77
	(9) Ventilation hood systems, filters.....	77

(e)	Accuracy of temperature measuring devices .....	77
	(1) Temperature measuring device, food.....	77
	(2) Temperature measuring device, ambient air and water .....	77
	(3) Pressure measuring devices, mechanical warewashing equipment .....	78
(f)	Functionality of equipment .....	78
	(1) Ventilation hood systems, drip prevention .....	78
	(2) Equipment openings, closures and deflectors.....	78
	(3) Dispensing equipment, protection of equipment and food .....	78
	(4) Vending machine, vending stage closure.....	79
	(5) Bearings and gear boxes, leakproof .....	79
	(6) Beverage tubing, separation.....	79
	(7) Ice units, separation of drains .....	80
	(8) Condenser unit, separation.....	80
	(9) Can openers on vending machines.....	80
	(10) Molluscan shellfish tanks.....	80
	(11) Vending machines, automatic shutoff.....	80
	(12) Temperature measuring devices .....	81
	(13) Warewashing machine, data plate operating specifications .....	82
	(14) Warewashing machines, internal baffles .....	82
	(15) Warewashing machines, temperature measuring devices.....	82
	(16) Manual warewashing equipment, heaters and baskets .....	82
	(17) Warewashing machines, sanitizer level indicator .....	82
	(18) Warewashing machines, flow pressure device .....	83
	(19) Warewashing sinks and drain boards, self-draining .....	83
	(20) Equipment compartments, drainage.....	83
	(21) Vending machines, liquid waste products .....	83
	(22) Case lot handling equipment, moveability.....	84
	(23) Vending machine doors and openings .....	84
	(24) Food equipment certification, classification, acceptability.....	84
(g)	Equipment, numbers and capacities.....	84
	(1) Cooling, heating, and holding capacities .....	84
	(2) Manual warewashing, sink compartment requirements.....	84
	(3) Drain boards.....	86
	(4) Ventilation hood systems, adequacy.....	86
	(5) Clothes washers and dryers.....	86
(h)	Utensils, temperature measuring devices, and testing devices .....	86
	(1) Utensils, consumer self-service .....	86
	(2) Food temperature measuring devices.....	86
	(3) Temperature measuring device with a probe .....	86
	(4) Temperature measuring devices, manual warewashing.....	86
	(5) Sanitizing solutions, testing devices .....	86
(i)	Location of equipment, clothes washers and dryers, and storage cabinets.....	86
	(1) Location requirements .....	87
	(2) Linen, single-service, single-use item exception .....	87
	(3) Clothes washer and dryer location requirements .....	87
(j)	Installation, fixed equipment .....	87

	(1)	Fixed equipment, spacing or sealing.....	87
	(2)	Fixed equipment, elevation or sealing .....	88
(k)		Equipment, maintenance and operation.....	88
	(1)	Good repair and proper adjustment.....	88
	(2)	Cutting surfaces .....	89
	(3)	Microwave ovens.....	89
	(4)	Warewashing equipment, cleaning frequency .....	89
	(5)	Warewashing machines, manufacturers' operating instructions .....	89
	(6)	Warewashing sinks, use limitation .....	89
	(7)	Warewashing equipment, cleaning agents.....	90
	(8)	Warewashing equipment, clean solutions.....	90
	(9)	Manual warewashing equipment, wash solution temperature .....	90
	(10)	Mechanical warewashing equipment, wash solution temperature.....	90
	(11)	Manual warewashing equipment, hot water sanitization temperatures .....	90
	(12)	Mechanical warewashing equipment, hot water sanitization temperatures .....	90
	(13)	Mechanical warewashing equipment, sanitization pressure .....	91
	(14)	Manual and mechanical warewashing equipment, chemical sanitization - temperature, water activity (pH), concentration, and hardness.....	91
	(15)	Manual warewashing equipment, chemical sanitization using detergent-sanitizers.....	92
	(16)	Warewashing equipment, determining chemical sanitizer concentration.....	92
(l)		Utensils and temperature measuring devices.....	92
	(1)	Good repair and proper calibration .....	92
	(2)	Single-service and single-use articles, required use .....	93
	(3)	Single-service and single-use articles, use limitation .....	93
	(4)	Shells, use limitation.....	93
(m)		Cleaning of equipment and utensils.....	93
	(1)	Equipment, food-contact surfaces, nonfood-contact surfaces and utensils.....	93
	(2)	Nonfood-contact surfaces .....	93
(n)		Frequency of cleaning.....	93
	(1)	Equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils.....	93
	(2)	Cooking and baking equipment .....	96
	(3)	Nonfood-contact surfaces .....	96
(o)		Methods of cleaning.....	96
	(1)	Dry cleaning.....	97
	(2)	Precleaning.....	97
	(3)	Loading of soiled items, warewashing machines .....	97
	(4)	Wet cleaning .....	97
	(5)	Washing, procedures for alternative manual warewashing equipment.....	97
	(6)	Rinsing procedures.....	98

(7)	Returnables, cleaning for refilling .....	99
(p)	Sanitization, food-contact surfaces and utensils .....	99
(q)	Sanitization frequency, before use after cleaning .....	99
(r)	Sanitization methods, hot water and chemical.....	100
(1)	Hot water manual operations .....	100
(2)	Hot water mechanical operations.....	100
(3)	Chemical manual or mechanical operations .....	100
(s)	Laundering, clean linens .....	100
(t)	Laundering, frequency .....	100
(1)	Linens.....	100
(2)	Cloth gloves .....	100
(3)	Linens and napkins, specified use.....	101
(4)	Wet wiping cloths .....	101
(5)	Dry wiping cloths.....	101
(u)	Laundering, methods.....	101
(1)	Storage of soiled linens.....	101
(2)	Mechanical washing.....	101
(3)	Use of laundry facilities .....	101
(v)	Drying, equipment and utensils .....	101
(1)	Equipment and utensils, air-drying required.....	101
(2)	Wiping cloths, air-drying locations.....	102
(w)	Lubricating and reassembling of food-contact surfaces, equipment .....	102
(1)	Food-contact surfaces .....	102
(2)	Equipment.....	102
(x)	Storage .....	102
(1)	Equipment, utensils, linens, and single-service and single-use articles.....	102
(2)	Storage prohibitions.....	103
(y)	Handling of utensils, single-service articles .....	103
(1)	Kitchenware and tableware.....	103
(2)	Soiled and clean tableware.....	104
(3)	Preset tableware .....	104
§229.166	Water, Plumbing, and Waste .....	105
(a)	Water source .....	105
(1)	Approved system .....	105
(2)	System flushing and disinfection.....	105
(3)	Bottled drinking water .....	105
(b)	Water quality standards.....	105
(1)	Public and private water systems.....	105
(2)	Nondrinking water .....	105
(3)	Sampling .....	105
(4)	Sample report.....	106
(c)	Water quantity and availability.....	106
(1)	Capacity .....	106
(2)	Pressure.....	106

	(3)	Hot water.....	106
(d)		Water distribution, delivery, and retention systems.....	106
	(1)	Distribution .....	106
	(2)	Alternative water supply .....	106
(e)		Plumbing systems, approved materials.....	107
	(1)	Construction.....	107
	(2)	Water filter .....	107
(f)		Plumbing design, construction, and installation .....	107
	(1)	Approved system and cleanable fixtures .....	107
	(2)	Handwashing facility, installation .....	107
	(3)	Automatic handwashing facility .....	107
	(4)	Backflow prevention, air gap.....	107
	(5)	Backflow prevention device, design standard .....	107
	(6)	Conditioning device, design.....	108
(g)		Plumbing, numbers and capacities.....	108
	(1)	Handwashing facilities.....	108
	(2)	Toilets and urinals.....	108
	(3)	Service sink.....	108
	(4)	Backflow prevention device, when required .....	108
	(5)	Backflow prevention device, carbonator .....	108
(h)		Plumbing, location and placement.....	109
	(1)	Handwashing facilities.....	109
	(2)	Backflow prevention device, location.....	109
	(3)	Conditioning device, location .....	109
(i)		Plumbing, operation and maintenance.....	109
	(1)	Using a handwashing facility.....	109
	(2)	Prohibiting a cross connection.....	109
	(3)	Scheduling inspection and service for a water system device .....	109
	(4)	Water reservoir of fogging devices, cleaning .....	110
	(5)	System maintained in good repair.....	110
	(6)	Mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank .....	110
(j)		Sewage retention, drainage, and delivery .....	113
	(1)	Establishment drainage system.....	113
	(2)	Backflow prevention.....	113
	(3)	Grease trap .....	113
	(4)	Conveying sewage .....	113
(k)		Disposal facility .....	113
	(1)	Approved sewage disposal system.....	113
	(2)	Other liquid wastes and rainwater.....	114
(l)		Storage facilities on the premises .....	114
	(1)	Indoor storage area.....	114
	(2)	Outdoor storage surface .....	114
	(3)	Outdoor enclosure.....	114
	(4)	Receptacles .....	114
	(5)	Receptacles in vending machines .....	114
	(6)	Outside receptacles .....	114

(7)	Storage areas, rooms, and receptacles, capacity and availability .....	114
(8)	Toilet room receptacle, covered.....	115
(9)	Cleaning implements and supplies.....	115
(10)	Storage areas, redeeming machines, receptacles, and waste handling units, location.....	115
(11)	Storing refuse, recyclables, and returnables .....	115
(12)	Areas, enclosures, and receptacles, good repair .....	116
(13)	Outside storage prohibitions .....	116
(14)	Covering receptacles.....	116
(15)	Using drain plugs.....	116
(16)	Maintaining refuse areas and enclosures .....	116
(17)	Cleaning receptacles .....	116
(m)	Refuse removal .....	117
(1)	Frequency.....	117
(2)	Receptacles or vehicles.....	117
(n)	Facilities for disposal and recycling, community or individual facility .....	117
§229.167	Physical Facilities .....	118
(a)	Indoor areas, surface characteristics .....	118
(1)	Smooth, durable, and easily cleanable.....	118
(2)	Closely woven and easily cleanable carpet.....	118
(3)	Nonabsorbent for areas subject to moisture.....	118
(b)	Outdoor areas, surface characteristics.....	118
(1)	Walking and driving areas .....	118
(2)	Exterior surfaces .....	118
(3)	Storage areas .....	118
(c)	Floors, walls, and ceilings.....	118
(1)	Cleanability.....	118
(2)	Floors, walls, and ceilings, utility lines .....	118
(3)	Floor and wall junctures, coved, and enclosed or sealed.....	119
(4)	Floor carpeting, restrictions and installation.....	119
(5)	Floor covering, mats and duckboards .....	119
(6)	Wall and ceiling coverings and coatings .....	119
(7)	Walls and ceilings, attachments.....	119
(8)	Walls and ceilings, studs, joists, and rafters .....	120
(d)	Functionality .....	120
(1)	Light bulbs, protective shielding.....	120
(2)	Heating, ventilating, air conditioning system vents.....	120
(3)	Insect control devices, design and installation.....	120
(4)	Toilet rooms, enclosed.....	121
(5)	Outer openings, protected.....	121
(6)	Exterior walls and roofs, protective barrier .....	122
(7)	Outdoor food vending areas, overhead protection.....	122
(8)	Outdoor walking and driving surfaces, graded to drain.....	122
(9)	Outdoor refuse areas, curbed and graded to drain .....	122
(10)	Private homes and living or sleeping quarters, use prohibition.....	122

(11)	Living or sleeping quarters, separation .....	122
(e)	Handwashing facilities.....	122
(1)	Minimum number .....	122
(2)	Handwashing cleanser, availability .....	122
(3)	Hand drying provision .....	123
(4)	Handwashing aids and devices, use restrictions .....	123
(5)	Handwashing signage .....	123
(6)	Disposable towels, waste receptacle .....	123
(f)	Toilets and urinals.....	123
(1)	Minimum number .....	123
(2)	Toilet tissue, availability .....	123
(g)	Lighting, intensity .....	123
(1)	Specifications for 110 lux .....	123
(2)	Specifications for 220 lux .....	123
(3)	Specifications for 540 lux .....	124
(h)	Ventilation, mechanical .....	124
(i)	Dressing areas and lockers, designation .....	124
(1)	Provision for dressing rooms and areas .....	124
(2)	Provision for lockers .....	124
(j)	Service sinks, availability .....	124
(k)	Handwashing facilities, conveniently located.....	124
(l)	Toilet rooms, convenience and accessibility .....	124
(m)	Employee accommodations, designated areas.....	124
(1)	Eating and tobacco areas.....	124
(2)	Location of lockers .....	124
(n)	Distressed merchandise, segregation and location.....	124
(o)	Receptacles, waste handling units, and designated storage areas.....	125
(p)	Premises, buildings, systems, rooms, fixtures, equipment, devices, and materials .....	125
(1)	Repairing.....	125
(2)	Cleaning, frequency and restrictions.....	125
(3)	Cleaning floors, dustless methods.....	125
(4)	Cleaning ventilation systems, nuisance and discharge prohibition .....	125
(5)	Cleaning maintenance tools, preventing contamination .....	125
(6)	Drying mops.....	126
(7)	Absorbent materials on floors, use limitation .....	126
(8)	Maintaining and using handwashing facilities.....	126
(9)	Closing toilet room doors.....	126
(10)	Using dressing rooms and lockers .....	126
(11)	Controlling pests .....	126
(12)	Removing dead or trapped birds, insects, rodents, and other pests .....	126
(13)	Storing maintenance tools.....	126
(14)	Maintaining premises, unnecessary items and litter .....	127
(15)	Prohibiting animals .....	127
	§229.168 Poisonous or Toxic Materials .....	129



(a)	Original containers, identifying information, prominence .....	129
(b)	Working containers, common name .....	129
(c)	Storage, separation .....	129
	(1) Separating poisonous or toxic materials .....	129
	(2) Locating poisonous or toxic materials .....	129
(d)	Presence and use .....	129
	(1) Restriction .....	129
	(2) Conditions of use .....	129
(e)	Container prohibitions, poisonous or toxic material containers .....	130
(f)	Chemicals.....	130
	(1) Sanitizers, criteria .....	130
	(2) Chemicals for washing fruits and vegetables, criteria .....	130
	(3) Boiler water additives, criteria.....	130
	(4) Drying agents, criteria.....	130
(g)	Lubricants, incidental food contact, criteria .....	131
(h)	Pesticides.....	131
	(1) Restricted use pesticides, criteria.....	131
	(2) Rodent bait stations.....	131
	(3) Tracking powders, pest control and monitoring .....	131
(i)	Medicines.....	132
	(1) Restriction and storage.....	132
	(2) Refrigerated medicines, storage.....	132
(j)	First aid supplies, storage.....	132
	(1) Labeled.....	132
	(2) Storage requirements .....	132
(k)	Other personal care items, storage .....	132
(l)	Storage and display, separation .....	132
	(1) Separating poisonous or toxic materials .....	132
	(2) Locating poisonous or toxic materials .....	132
§229.169	Mobile Food Establishments.....	133
(a)	Mobile food establishment provisions .....	133
	(1) General.....	133
	(2) Restricted operation .....	133
	(3) Single-service articles .....	133
	(4) Existing refrigeration equipment .....	133
	(5) Mobile water system materials, design, and operation.....	133
	(6) Mobile food establishment tank inlet.....	133
	(7) Readily moveable.....	133
	(8) Sewage, other liquid waste, and rainwater.....	134
	(9) Mobile food establishment water and wastewater exemption .....	134
(b)	Central preparation facility .....	135
	(1) Supplies, cleaning, and servicing operations .....	135
	(2) Construction.....	135
(c)	Servicing area and operations .....	135
	(1) Protection .....	135

(2)	Construction exemption .....	135
§229.170	Temporary Food Establishments .....	136
(a)	General.....	136
(b)	Food temperatures.....	136
(c)	Ice.....	136
(d)	Equipment.....	136
(1)	Design and construction.....	136
(2)	Location and installation.....	136
(3)	Hot and cold holding equipment.....	136
(4)	Protection from contamination .....	136
(5)	Alternative manual warewashing.....	136
(e)	Single-service articles .....	136
(f)	Water.....	136
(g)	Wet storage .....	137
(h)	Sewage .....	137
(i)	Handwashing.....	137
(j)	Floors .....	137
(k)	Ceilings and outer openings of food preparation areas.....	137
(1)	Ceilings .....	137
(2)	Outer openings .....	137
(3)	Exclusion provision .....	137
§229.171	Compliance and Enforcement.....	138
(a)	Use for intended purpose, public health protection .....	138
(1)	Safeguarding public health .....	138
(2)	Assessment of existing facilities.....	138
(b)	Additional requirements, preventing health hazards, provision for conditions not addressed .....	138
(1)	Option to impose additional requirements.....	138
(2)	Required documentation .....	138
(c)	Variances.....	138
(1)	Modifications and waivers.....	138
(2)	Documentation of proposed variance and justification .....	138
(3)	Conformance with approved procedures .....	139
(d)	HACCP plan requirements .....	139
(1)	When a HACCP plan is required.....	139
(2)	Contents of a HACCP plan.....	140
(e)	Confidentiality, trade secrets .....	141
(f)	Permit requirement, prerequisite for operation.....	141
(g)	Conditions of retention, responsibilities of the permit holder .....	141
(1)	Post the permit .....	141
(2)	Comply with rule provisions.....	141
(3)	Comply with HACCP plan, if required.....	141
(4)	Contact the regulatory authority to report an illness.....	141
(5)	Discontinue operations if imminent health hazard may exist.....	141

(6)	Allow representatives of the regulatory authority access .....	141
(7)	Replace existing facilities and equipment.....	141
(8)	Upgrade or replace countertop, under-counter and open-top refrigeration units.....	142
(9)	Comply with the directives of the regulatory authority .....	142
(10)	Accept notices .....	142
(11)	Be subject to legal remedies for failure to comply .....	142
(h)	Inspection frequency, performance-based and risk-based .....	142
(1)	Past performance for nonconformance .....	142
(2)	Past performance for numerous or repeat violations .....	142
(3)	Past performance for complaints .....	142
(4)	Hazards associated with particular foods.....	142
(5)	The type of operation .....	143
(6)	Number of people served.....	143
(7)	Whether population served is a highly susceptible population.....	143
(8)	Other risk factors.....	143
(i)	Competency and access .....	143
(1)	Competency of inspectors.....	143
(2)	Access allowed at reasonable times after due notice .....	143
(3)	Refusal, notification of right to access, and final request for access .....	143
(4)	Refusal, reporting.....	144
(5)	Inspection warrant to gain access .....	144
(j)	Report of findings .....	144
(1)	Documenting information and observations.....	144
(2)	Specifying time frame for corrections .....	145
(3)	Issuing report and obtaining acknowledgment of receipt.....	145
(4)	Refusal to sign acknowledgment .....	145
(5)	Public information .....	145
(6)	Inspection reports – form.....	146
(k)	Imminent health hazards.....	149
(1)	Ceasing operations and reporting.....	149
(2)	Resumption of operations .....	149
(l)	Critical violations, time frame for corrections.....	149
(1)	Timely correction.....	149
(2)	Verification and documentation of correction .....	150
(m)	Other violations, time frame for corrections.....	150
(1)	Time frame.....	150
(2)	Extension of compliance schedule.....	150
(n)	Examination and detention of food.....	150
(o)	Investigation and control.....	151
(1)	Obtaining information: personal history of illness, medical examination, and specimen analysis .....	151
(2)	Restriction or exclusion of food employee, summary suspension.....	151
(3)	Restriction or exclusion order: warning or hearing not required, information required in order .....	151
(4)	Release of employee from restriction or exclusion.....	152

(p)	Reporting of communicable diseases.....	152
(1)	Who shall report.....	152
(2)	What to report .....	152
(3)	When to report .....	153
(4)	Where to report .....	153
(5)	Reporting and other duties of local health authorities and regional directors.....	153
§229.173	Heimlich Maneuver Poster .....	154
(a)	Purpose.....	154
(b)	Placement.....	154
(c)	Specifications.....	154
(1)	Printed on white paper .....	154
(2)	Printed in English and Spanish .....	154
(3)	Major headings.....	154
(4)	Subheadings .....	154
(5)	Remaining subheadings .....	154
(6)	Body font requirements.....	154
§229.174	Bed and Breakfast Extended Establishments.....	155
(a)	General.....	155
(b)	Food supplies .....	155
(c)	Food preparation and protection .....	155
(1)	Food preparation and protection .....	155
(2)	Temperature requirements .....	155
(d)	Cleaning and sanitizing.....	155
(1)	Manual .....	155
(2)	Mechanical.....	155
(e)	Personal hygiene .....	155
(f)	Employee restrooms.....	155
(g)	Equipment and utensil design and construction.....	155
(h)	Handsinks.....	155
(1)	Location .....	155
(2)	Intended use .....	155
(i)	Food-contact surfaces .....	156
(j)	Insect proof/rodent proof .....	156
(1)	Construction.....	156
(2)	Chemical control.....	156
(k)	Equipment.....	156
(l)	Garbage receptacles .....	156
(m)	Sewage .....	156
(1)	Public sewage treatment plant .....	156
(2)	Individual sewage disposal system .....	156
(n)	Water supply .....	156
§229.175	Outfitter Operations .....	157

(a)	General.....	157
(b)	Food supplies .....	157
(c)	Food temperatures.....	157
(d)	Warewashing.....	157
(e)	Ice usage.....	157
(f)	Potable water.....	157
(g)	Handwashing facilities.....	157
(h)	Equipment.....	157

# INDEX

a<sub>w</sub>, definition, 1

## Access

- allowed after due notice, 143
- application for inspection order, 144
- court petition for, 144
- denial, judicial remedies, 144
- notification of right, 143
- owner agreement, 141
- refusal, 143
- to premises and records, 141, 143

Acidity. *See pH*, 10

## Additives, food and color

- canthaxanthin, 67
- definition, 1
- food upon receipt, 38
- limitations, 63
- sulfites, 45
- unapproved, protection from, 45

Administrative remedies, 138-153

## Adulterated

- definition, 1
- food condition, 33, 68

## Air-drying

- equipment and utensils, 101
- wiping cloths, locations, 102

Air temperature, 77-78

*See Ambient temperature measuring devices*

Aisles in work spaces. *See Spacing*, 87

Alkalinity. *See pH*, 10

Allergens, 67

Alligator. *See Fish*, 6

Ambient air temperature measuring devices, 77-78

## Animal foods, raw

- consumer self-service, limitations, 50-51
- cooking requirements, 52-55
- separation from other foods, 44

Animal foods, raw or undercooked, consumer advisory, 68

## Animals

- commercially raised for food, 35-37, 52
- exotic species, limitations as food source, 5,35
- handling by employees, prohibition and exception, 29, 32, 127-128
- live, prohibition and exceptions, 127-128
- wild, 7-8, 35-36, 53

Anti-slip floor coverings, 118

Applicant, responsibility to report illness, 23

Approved, definition, 1

## Area

- adjacent to easily movable equipment, 5
- behind vending machine kickplates, 77
- consumer eating and drinking, 50-52, 120, 127
- consumer shopping, 50-52, 115, 120, 127
- designated for eating, drinking, and tobacco use, 31, 124
- dining, 3, 115, 127
- distressed merchandise, 72, 124
- dressing, 124, 126
- driving, 118, 122
- dry storage, 119
- employee restriction, 25, 151
- exposed, 120
- food preparation, 119, 120, 127
- handwashing facility, 107-109, 122-123
- indoor, construction material, 118-120
- light intensity by, 123-124
- living, 122
- outdoor, construction materials, 118
- outside fenced, 127
- outside food vending & dispensing, 79
- poisonous or toxic materials, 131-132
- prohibited food storage, 49-50
- protected, for tank vent, 111
- refuse, 117, 118, 122, 125
- requiring drip-free ventilation, 78
- self-service, 23
- separate, for raw foods, 44
- servicing, 118, 135
- shellfish harvesting, 38-42
- sleeping, 122
- storage, 114-117, 125, 128, 129
- underneath equipment for cleaning, 88
- underneath fingernails, cleaning, 28, 43
- unaffected by imminent health hazard, 149
- vending machine, 19, 79, 122
- walking, 118, 122
- warewashing, 118, 119, 123
- waste servicing, 113, 134
- where persons must comply with Rules, 22
- where unnecessary persons are not allowed, 22

Artificial color or flavor, declaration, 66-67

Asymptomatic carrier, 24-26

Attachments, wall and ceilings, cleanability, 119-120

Automatic shutoff, vending machines, 80-81

- Backflow prevention, plumbing system
  - air gap, 107, 108
  - knowledge of person in charge, 21
  - sewage systems, 113
  - water system operation, 107
- Backflow prevention device, plumbing system
  - copper, use limitation, 74
  - design standard, 107
  - location, 109
  - numbers and capacity, 108
  - operation and maintenance, 107-109
- Backsiphonage. *See Backflow, 107-109*
- Bacon, slab, storage, 45
- Bacteria. *See Disease outbreaks caused by, 24*
- Baffles, internal, for warewashing machine, 82
- Bags, 114, 116 *Also see Single-service articles*
- Bait, fish, 128
- Bait station, rodent, 131
- Bakery products, 67
- Bare hand contact of food, 42-43
- Basket, for warewashing equipment, 82, 97
- Bearings and gear boxes, leakproof, 79
- Bed and Breakfast, 1-2, 155-156
- Beef
  - consumer self-service, 50-51
  - cooking requirement, 52-55
  - minimum holding times for cooking, 52-55
  - oven parameters for cooking, 53-54
  - raw, storage, 44
  - raw or rare, consumer advisory, 68
  - steak, seared, 54
  - use of clean equipment, 93-94
  - use of laundered gloves, 48, 100
  - whole muscle, intact, 19, 33, 54
- Beef roasts, cooking requirements, 53-54
- Beverage
  - containers, consumer-owned, refilling, 99
  - definition, 2
  - tubing, separation from stored ice, 79
  - vending machines, liquid waste disposal, 83
- Birds, dead or trapped, removal, 126
- Boil. *See Lesion, containing pus, 24*
- Boiler water additives, criteria, 130
- Bottled drinking water
  - definition, 2
  - source, 105
- Botulism, reporting, 152,
  - See also Clostridium botulinum, 64*
- Bowls. *See Tableware*
- Bread wrappers. *See Single-use articles*
- Buffets, monitoring by food employees, 48, 51
- Buffet table sign, 48
- Buildings. *See Physical facilities*
- Bulk food
  - dispensing methods, 51
  - display, protection, 50-51
  - labeling requirements, 67
  - liquid, 83
  - raw animal food, prohibition, 51
  - unpackaged, labeling exemptions, 67
- Bulk milk container dispensing tube, 93
- Cabinets
  - storage, 86-87
  - vending machine, 84
- Calibration, temperature measuring devices, 92-93
- Can openers
  - design and construction, 77
  - maintenance and operation, 89
  - on vending machines, design & construction, 80
- Cans, number 10. *See Single-use articles, 18*
- Canthaxanthin, color additive, 67
- Cardboard for recycling, outside storage, 116
- Carpeting, floor, restrictions and installation, 118, 119
- Carrier, disease. *See Asymptomatic carrier, 25*
- Carry-out utensils. *See Single-service articles*
- Case lot handling equipment, moveability, 84
- Casing, 2, 62
- Cast iron utensils and equipment food-contact surfaces,
  - use limitation, 73
- Catering operation. *See Food establishment*
- Ceilings, coverings & coatings, cleanability, 118-120
- Ceramic utensils, lead limitation, 73
- Certification number, definition, 2
- Certified Food Protection Manager, 20
- CFR, definition, 2
- Chemicals
  - preservatives, declaration, 66
  - sanitization of equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils, 99
  - sanitizers, criteria, 100, 130, 131
  - sanitizers, hand dip, 30
  - washing fruits and vegetables, criteria, 130
- Chicken, raw, immersion in ice or water, 46
- Child care center, 2
- China utensils, lead limitation, 73
- Chlorine solutions, chemical sanitization, 91-92
- Cider, apple. *See juice, 9, 40, 57, 69*
- CIP
  - definition, 2
  - equipment, design and construction, 76
- Clams, lightly cooked or raw, consumer advisory, 68
  - See also Molluscan shellfish*
- Cleanability
  - carpeting, 118-119
  - ceilings, 118-120, 135
  - floor and wall junctures, 119
  - floors, 118-119, 137
  - food-contact surfaces, 76-77
  - mats and duckboards, 119
  - nonfood-contact surfaces, 77
  - studs, joists, and rafters, 120
  - utility lines, 118
  - wall and ceiling attachments, 119-120
  - wall and ceiling coverings and coatings, 119
  - walls, 118-120
- Cleanable fixtures, plumbing system, 107
- Cleaned in place. *See CIP, 2, 76*
- Cleaners. *See Poisonous or toxic materials, 129*
- Cleaning agents
  - handwashing, 122
  - warewashing equipment, 90

- Cleaning and sanitizing
  - equipment and supplies for refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 115
  - equipment and utensils to prevent food cross contamination, 42, 44
  - knowledge demonstrated by person in charge, 23
  - maintenance tools, preventing contamination, 125
  - physical facilities, frequency and restrictions, 125
  - procedure for employees' hands and arms, 28-29
  - ventilation systems, nuisance and discharge prohibition, 125
- Cleaning of equipment and utensils
  - criteria, 93
  - frequency, 93-96
  - methods, 96-99
- Cleanliness, personal, of employees
  - finger nails, 30-31
  - hands and arms, 28-29
  - jewelry, prohibition, 31
  - outer clothing, 31
- Clean tableware sign, 48
- Clostridium botulinum***, nongrowth in reduced atmosphere packaging, variance, 64 reporting, botulism, 152
  - See also Potentially hazardous food definition*
- Clothes washers and dryers
  - availability, 86
  - location for contamination prevention, 87
- Clothing, outer, of employees, clean condition, 31
- Cloths
  - for use with raw foods of animal origin, treatment, 48
  - for wiping food spills, criteria, 47
- Code of Federal Regulations, definition, 2
- Cold holding of potentially hazardous food, 60
- Cold-plate beverage cooling devices, separation from stored ice, design, and construction, 79
- Commingle, definition, 3
- Comminuted, definition, 3
  - cooking fish and meats, 52
- Commissary. *See Food establishment*, 6-7, 135
- Common dining area, definition, 3
- Common name, 45, 66, 129
- Communicable. *See Infectious agent*
- Community or individual facility for disposal of refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 117
- Compactors, on-site, 114
- Compliance with Rules, responsibility of permit holder, 141
- Condenser unit, separation from food and food storage space, 80
- Condiments, protection from contamination by consumers, 50
- Conditioning device, plumbing system
  - design, 108
  - location, 109
- Confidentiality
  - protection, 141
- Confirmed disease outbreak, definition, 3
- Construction
  - mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank, 110, 133
  - plumbing system, 107
- Consumer
  - advisory, 68
  - definition, 3
  - food on display, protection from contamination by, 50-51
  - information requirements, 67-68
  - self-service, clean tableware for refills, 48-49
  - self-service operations, protection from contamination, 50-52
- Consumer-owned container, refilling, 99
- Contact time, chemical sanitization of equipment
  - food-contact surfaces and utensils, 100
- Container prohibitions for poisonous or toxic materials, 130
- Containers, food storage, identification of food, 45
- Containers, poisonous or toxic materials and personal care items *See also Single-service articles*
  - labeling and identification, 129
  - original, identifying information, 129
  - use prohibitions, 130
  - working, common name identification, 129
- Contaminated food, disposition, 68-69
- Contamination of food after receiving, prevention, 43-46
- Contamination prevention, location of equipment, clothes washers/dryers & storage cabinets, 86-87
- Control of foodborne disease transmission by employees, 23-26, 31
- Controlled atmosphere packaging. *See Reduced oxygen packaging*, 64-66
- Cooking
  - equipment, cleaning frequency, 93-96
  - destroying organisms of public health concern, 52-55
  - utensils. *See Utensils and Kitchenware*
- Cooling
  - capacity, food equipment, 84
  - methods to limit growth of organisms of public health concern, 59-60
  - potentially hazardous cooked food, 59-60
- Copper and copper alloys, use limitation in food contact and fittings, 74
- Corned beef roasts
  - minimum holding times for cooking, 53-54
  - oven parameters for cooking, 53-54
- Correction of critical violation
  - time frame, 149
  - timeliness, 149-150
  - verification and documentation, 150
- Corrective action compliance, 149-150
- Corrosion-resistant material, definition, 3
- Cosmetics. *See Personal care items*



Counter guards, 50

Critical control point  
 definition, 3  
 flow diagram, 140  
 knowledge demonstration by person in charge, 20  
 monitoring, responsibility of permit holder, 139  
 standard operating procedures, 140-141

Critical item, definition, 3

Critical limit  
 definition, 3  
 violations, timely corrections, 149

Cross connection, water supply system, prohibition, 109

Cross contamination of food, protection by separation and segregation, 44

Crustacea shells, use limitation, 93

Crystal utensils, lead limitation, 73

Cups, refilling in consumer self-service, 49

Curing food, 63

Cut, infected. *See Lesion, containing pus, 24*

Cutting surfaces  
 materials, 74-75  
 resurfacing, 89

Data plate, warewashing machine, 82

Date marking of ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food, 60-62

Dealer's tag/label for molluscan shellstock, requirements, 39-42

Deli tissue, use to avoid contaminating food, 42

Delivery, refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 116

Denial of access, sworn statement, 143-144

Department, 4

Design, construction, and installation  
 cleanability, 118-120  
 functionality, 120-122  
 mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank, 110-111, 133  
 plumbing system, 107-108  
 sewage system, 113

Design standard, backflow prevention device, 108

Detergents. *See Cleaning agents, 90*

Detergent-sanitizers  
 for warewashing equipment, 85, 92  
 rinsing procedures, 98

Devices. *See Physical facilities, Equipment & Plumbing*

Diarrhea, employee symptom, 24

Dipper wells. *See Utensils, in-use storage, 47*

Disclosure, definition, 4

Disease of employee, 23-28

Disease or medical condition, reporting responsibility, 23-28, 152-153

Disease outbreaks caused by *S. typhi*, *Shigella* spp., *Shiga toxin-producing E. coli*, Norovirus or hepatitis A virus, 24, 152-153

Dish baskets. *See Baskets, 82*

Dishes. *See Menu items, Tableware*

Dishwashing. *See Warewashing*

Disinfection  
 drinking water system, 105  
 mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank, 112

Dispensing equipment, design and construction for protection of equipment and food, 78-79

Dispensing tube, bulk milk container, 93

Display. *See Food display, 50*

Disposable towels, waste receptacle, 115

Disposal facilities  
 refuse, recyclables & returnables, 114, 116-117  
 sewage, other liquid wastes & rainwater, 113-114

Disposition of ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous food, 68-69

Distressed merchandise, segregation, and, location, 124

Documentation  
 correction of critical violation, 149  
 employee training, proper handwashing, 42-43  
 inspection report, 144-146  
 variances, 138-139

Dogs in food establishments  
 handling prohibition, 32  
 patrol and sentry, 32, 127  
 pets, 127-128  
 service & assistance, 17, 32, 127

Dollies. *See Case lot handling equipment, 84*

Donation of food, 71-72

Doors  
 common dining area, 127  
 equipment maintenance, 89  
 physical facility, 121  
 refuse receptacle, 116  
 toilet room, 121, 126  
 vending machine, 79, 84

Drain plugs for equipment and receptacles for refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 116

Drainage of equipment compartments, 83

Drainage system, food establishment, design and installation, 111, 113, 134

Drainboards  
 capacity, 86  
 cleaning frequency, 89  
 cleanability, 73, 75, 77  
 warewashing, self-draining, 83

Drains, indirect, 107, 113

Dressing areas  
 designation, 124  
 use by employees, 126

Dried eggs, condition at receipt, 38

Drinking by employees, food contamination prevention, 31

Drinking water  
 bottled, source, 105, 137  
 definition, 4

Drinking water systems  
 approved, 105, 133, 136-137, 156, 157  
 flushing and disinfection, 105, 112

- Drip prevention, design and construction of
  - ventilation hood systems, 78, 86
- Driving surfaces, 118
- Dry cleaning methods, equipment and utensils, 97
- Dry eggs, 38
- Dry milk, 38
- Dry storage area, definition, 4
- Drying agents, criteria, 130-131
- Duckboards, cleanability, 119
- Due process rights, 143-144
- Dustless methods of cleaning floors, 125
  
- E. Coli. See Escherichia coli***
- Easily cleanable, definition, 4
- Easily movable, definition, 5
- Eating by employees, food contamination prevention, 31
- Effective date of Rules, Title Page, 138
- Eggs
  - cooking requirements for immediate service, 52
  - cooking requirements for pooled eggs, 52-53
  - definition, 5
  - hard-boiled, 12
  - lightly cooked or raw, consumer advisory, 54, 68
  - liquid, frozen, and dry, condition at receipt, 38
  - pasteurized, substitute for shell eggs, 12, 45, 69
  - potentially hazardous food, 12
  - service to highly susceptible populations, 69-70
- Eggs, raw, shell
  - condition at receipt, 37, 38
  - cooking, 52, 53
  - cooling, 59, 60
  - temperature at receipt, 37
- Elderly. *See Highly susceptible population*, 8, 25
- Emergency occurrence. *See Imminent health hazard*
- Employee
  - accommodations, location, 124
  - definition, 5
  - disease or medical condition, 23-25
  - dressing areas, number, 124
  - eating, drinking, and tobacco use,
    - designated areas, 31, 124
  - food contaminated by, disposition, 69, 148-149
  - hygiene, 28-31
  - ill, exclusions and restrictions, 25-26
  - practices, supervision of, 22-23
  - prevention of food contamination, 42-43
  - responsibility to report illness, 23-25
  - serving high-risk populations, exclusions
    - and restrictions, 25-26

*See Food employee, Permit holder; Person in charge*
- Emu, 8, 13, 52
- Enclosures for refuse, recyclables, and returnables, operation and maintenance, 114
- Enforcement. *See Compliance & Enforcement*, 138-153
- EPA, definition, 5
- Equipment
  - air-drying, 101-102
  - assessment for Rule enforcement, 138
  - case lot handling, 84
  - cleaning criteria, 93
  - cleaning frequency, warewashing, 89, 93-94
  - compartments, drainage, 83
  - cooling, heating, and holding capacities, 84
  - definition, 5
  - design and construction, durability and strength, 75-76, 136
  - existing, 60, 133, 138, 141-142
  - fixed, elevation or sealing, installation, 88
  - fixed, spacing or sealing, installation, 87
  - food-contact surfaces and utensils,
    - cleaning frequency, 93-96
  - HACCP plan, 140
  - location for contamination prevention, 86-87
  - maintenance, 88
  - necessary replacement, 60, 141-142
  - plans, 140
  - reassembly after cleaning, 102
  - repair and adjustment, 88
  - spacing, 87
  - storage, 102, 126
  - storage prohibitions, 103
- Equipment certification and classification, 84
- Equipment and utensils, methods of cleaning
  - dry cleaning, 97
  - precleaning, 97
  - rinsing procedures, 98-99
  - wet cleaning, 97
  - washing, alternative manual warewashing, 97-98
- Equipment for refuse, recyclables, and returnables,
  - cleanable, 114
  - cleaning, 99, 115, 116
  - covering, 114, 115, 116
  - drain plugs, 116
  - location, 115
- Equipment openings, closures and deflectors, design and construction, 78
- Equipment, utensils, and linens *See Physical facilities*
  - cleaning, 93-102
  - design and construction, 75-84
  - laundering linens, 100-101
  - location and installation, 86-88, 136
  - maintenance and operation, 88-93
  - materials for construction and repair, 73-75
  - numbers and capacities, 84-86
  - protection of clean items, 102-104
  - sanitization of equipment and utensils, 99
- Escargot. *See Fish*
- Escherichia coli* O157:H7**, 152
- Escherichia coli, Shiga toxin-producing***
  - cause of disease outbreak, 24
  - cause of employee illness, 23
  - employee exclusion and restriction, 25-28
  - reporting responsibility of person in charge, 23, 141
  - infection, conditions for release of employee
    - from restriction or exclusion, 26-28, 152
  - stools are free of, 27, 152

- Exclude, definition, 5
- Exclusion of employee
  - illness, 25
  - infection or disease, 23-26, 151-152
  - release, 152
  - removal, 26-28
- Exclusion order
  - for infected or diseased employee, 25-26, 151
- Exotic animal, definition, 5, 35
- Expiration time for potentially hazardous food, 60-62,63
  
- Facilities
  - assessment for Rule enforcement, 138
  - disposal, recycling, & removal of waste,114-117
  - necessary replacement, 60, 133
  - on-premises for refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 114-116
- Facility plans and specifications, submission and approval, 139
- Faucet, handwashing, 107
- FDA, definition, 5
- Fever, employee symptom, 24
- Filter, compressed air, for drinking water system, 112
- Filtering equipment, hot oil, design and construction, 77
- Fingernails of employees, maintenance, 30-31
  - artificial, and nail polish, 31
  - brushes, 43
- First aid supplies in food establishments, storage, 132  
*See also Personal care items*
- Fish
  - bait, 128
  - consumer self-service, 51
  - cooking requirements, 52-55
  - definition, 6
  - frozen by supplier, freezing records, 56
  - live, 127
  - other than molluscan shellfish, 33, 55-56
  - raw, storage, 44
  - salmonid, 67
  - use of clean equipment, 94
  - use of laundered gloves, 100
- Fish, lightly cooked or raw, consumer advisory, 54, 68
  - freezing to control parasites, 55-56
  - immersion in ice or water, 46
  - marinated, or partially cooked, ready-to-eat, records of freezing, 56
  - restriction on reduced oxygen packaging, 66
- Fitting or tubing, copper and copper alloys, use limitation, 74
- Fixtures. *See Physical facilities*
- Flatware. *See Tableware*
- Floor drains, cleanability, 119
- Floor-mounted equipment, clearance, 88
- Floors
  - absorbent materials, use limitation,118-119,126
  - and floor coverings, cleanability, 118, 125
  - dustless cleaning methods, 125
- Flow pressure valve, warewashing machine, 83
  
- Flushing
  - drinking water system, 105
  - mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank, 112
  - waste retention tanks, 134
- Flux, use limitation for food-contact surfaces, 74
- Fogging devices, cleaning the water reservoir, 110
- Food
  - approved sources, 33-37
  - additives, 1, 38, 45, 63
  - characteristics, 33
  - contact with equipment and utensils, 46-47
  - contaminated, 68-69
  - cooked, potentially hazardous, cooling, 58-60
  - damaged,spoiled or recalled, storage, 44,68,124
  - definition, 6
  - destruction of organisms of public health concern, 52-56
  - frozen, potentially hazardous, 57-58
  - hermetically sealed, source, 34
  - honest presentation, 66, 68, 138
  - identity, presentation, and on-premises labeling, 66-68
  - in contact with water or ice, storage or display, 46
  - limitation of growth of organisms of public health concern, 57-63
  - packaged and unpackaged, separation, packaging and segregation, 43-45
  - packaged, labeling, 33, 66-67
  - protection from contamination, 42-52
  - specialized preparation methods, variance requirement, 63-66
  - standards of identity, 66
  - temperature & time control, limiting growth of organisms of public health concern,57-63
  - vended, potentially hazardous, original container, 50
- Food, potentially hazardous
  - HACCP plan, 64-66, 139-141
  - hot and cold holding, 60
  - temperature at receipt, 37
  - temperature and time requirements, 57-63
  - time as public health control, 63
- Food, ready-to-eat, potentially hazardous
  - date marking, 60-62
  - disposition, 62-63
  - handling, 29
- Food additive, definition, 1
- Food bank. *See Food establishment, 6*
- Food cart. *See definitions, Food establishment, 6, mobile food establishment, 9 and pushcart, 14*
- Food contact, copper, use limitation, 74
- Food-contact surfaces
  - cast iron equipment, use limitation, 73
  - construction materials, 73
  - copper, use limitation, 74
  - cleaning criteria, 93

- cleaning frequency of equipment, 93-96
- definition, 6
- design and construction, cleanability, 76
- galvanized metal equipment, use limitation, 74
- lead in ceramic, china & crystal, 73
- lead in pewter alloys, use limitation, 74
- lead in solder and flux, use limitation, 74
- linens and napkins, use limitation, 47
- lubricating, 102
- sanitization criteria, 99-100, 130-131
- sanitization frequency, 99
- sanitization methods for equipment, 100
- "V" threads, use limitation, 77, 111
- wet cleaning methods for equipment, 97-98
- wood, use limitation, 74-75
- Food containers
  - placement in cooling or cold holding equipment, covered, 44
  - proper cooling, 59-60
  - prohibitions, 130
- Food contamination
  - by persons, discarding, 69
  - by unclean utensils and equipment, 46-49
  - prevention after receiving, 42-43
  - prevention by employees, 42-43
- Food display, preventing contamination by consumers, 50
- Food employee
  - definition, 6
  - responsibility to report illness, 28
- Food establishment
  - definition, 6
  - inspection, frequency, 142-143
  - permit to operate, 141
  - temporary, 136-137
- Food guards. *See Food display, 50*
- Food package integrity, 38
- Food processing plant, definition, 7
- Food Protection Manager, Certified, 20
- Food receiving, 37-40
- Food reheated in microwave oven, requirements, 55
- Food safety
  - control measures, HACCP plan, 139-141
  - purpose of the Rules, 1
- Food service establishment. *See Food establishment*
- Food sources,
  - compliance with food law, 33-34
  - original containers and records, 40-42
  - plans, 139-141
- Food specifications for receiving, 37-40
- temperature, 37
- Food-specific container for beverages, refilling, 99
- Food storage
  - containers, identification of food, 45
  - preventing contamination from premises, 49-50
  - prohibited areas, 49-50
- Food temperature measuring devices
  - accessibility, 86
  - design and construction, accuracy, 77-78
- Food vending location/areas *See Food establishment*
  - outdoor, overhead protection, 122
- Foodborne disease
  - outbreak, definition, 6
  - prevention, knowledge, 20-22
  - prevention, 23-28, 149
- Foodborne illness
  - nature and extent, 6
  - potential as vector, frequency of inspections, 142-143
  - transmission by employees, prevention, 23-28
- Foot candles. *See Lighting, 123-124*
- Fork lifts. *See Case lot handling equipment, 84*
- Forks, handling, 103-104 *Also See Tableware*
- Freezing to destroy organisms of public health concern, 55-56
- Frog. *See Fish, 6*
- Frozen eggs, condition at receipt, 38
- Frozen food, limiting growth of organisms of public health concern, 55-56, 57
  - labeled, shipped & received frozen, 37
  - maintain frozen, 57
- Fruits, raw
  - cooking, 55
  - washing, 46, 130
  - whole or cut, immersion in ice or water, 46
  - whole, uncut, storage, 46
- Galvanized metal, use limitation for utensils and food-contact surfaces of equipment, 74
- Game animal
  - commercially raised for food, 35-37
  - cooking requirements, 52-53
  - definition, 7
  - exotic species, 5, 35-37, 52-53
  - limitations as food source, 35-37
  - wild, field-dressed, limitations as food source, 35-37, 52-53
- Gauge cock. *See Flow pressure valve, 83*
- Garbage. *See Refuse, 114-117, 122*
- Garlic. *See Potentially hazardous food definition, 11*
- Gastrointestinal illness, symptoms of employee, 23-24
- General use pesticide, definition, 8
- Glasses, refilling in consumer self-service, 49
- Gloves
  - cloth, laundering frequency, 100
  - handwash before donning, 29
  - single-use, 42, 48
  - slash resistant, 48
- Grade A Standards, definition, 8
- Grease traps, in food establishment drainage systems, 113
- Ground beef. *See Comminuted definition, 3*
  - cooking, 52-53
- Group residence, definition, 8
- Guard dog. *See Service animal, 17*
- Guide dog. *See Service animal, 17*

HACCP plan  
 compliance, responsibility of permit holder, 141  
 contents, 140-141  
 criteria, reduced oxygen packaging, 64-66  
 critical limits, nonconformance, 125  
 definition, 8  
 knowledge by person in charge, 20-21  
 variances, 138-139

HACCP principles, demonstrate knowledge 20  
 failure to demonstrate knowledge 144

Hair restraints for employees, effectiveness, 31

Hamburger. *See comminuted definition, 3*  
 cooking, 52-53

Hand drying provision, 28, 123

Hand, sanitizers, 29-30

Hand sanitizers for employees, 29-30, 43

Handling  
 kitchenware, 103-104  
 single-service and single-use articles, 103  
 tableware, 103-104

Hands and arms of employees  
 clean condition, 28  
 cleaning procedure, 28-29  
 hand sanitizers, 29-30  
 special handwash procedures, 29  
 when and where to wash, 29, 42-43

Hands, employees, avoiding contact with food, 42-43

Handwashing  
 cleanser, availability, 122  
 food employees, 28-29, 42-43, 123  
 procedures, special, for employees, 29  
 training documentation, 42-43

Handwashing facilities  
 automatic, installation, 107, 108  
 cleanability, 107  
 design and construction, 107  
 location, placement, accessible, 109, 124, 155  
 maintaining and using, 126  
 numbers and capacities, 108, 122  
 operation and maintenance, 109-110  
 use limitation, 109  
 signage, 123  
 water temperature, 107

Harvester's tag/label for molluscan shellstock, requirements, 39-40

Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point. *See HACCP*

Hazard, definition, 8

Health hazard, imminent  
 discontinuance of operations and reporting requirement, 149  
 prevention, Rules application, additional requirements, 138, 149  
 summary suspension of operations, 151

Health status of employee, required reporting, 23-28, 152

Hearing, appeal, restriction or exclusion order, 151

Heat lamp, shield, 120

Heater, for manual warewashing equipment, 82

Heating capacity, food equipment, 84

Heimlich Maneuver Poster, 154

Hepatitis A virus  
 cause of disease outbreak, 24  
 cause of employee illness, 23  
 conditions for release of employee from restriction or exclusion, 26-28, 152  
 reporting, person-in-charge, 28, 152  
 virus-free employee, removal of restriction, 26-27, 152

Hermetically sealed  
 container, definition, 8  
 food, source, 34  
 food containers, cleaning, 44  
 reheating, food taken from a container, 56

High-risk conditions of employee illness, 24-26

High-risk population. *See Highly susceptible population*

Highly susceptible population  
 additional safeguards, 69-71  
 consumer advisory, 68  
 definition, 8  
 exclusions and restrictions of ill employees, 25

Holding capacity, food equipment, 84

Holding tank. *See Sewage, holding tank, 134*

Holding time, minimum  
 comminuted meats, 52-53  
 cooking, roast beef and corned beef, 53-54

Hollowware. *See Tableware*

Homes and living/sleeping quarters, private, use prohibition, 22, 33, 122

Honest presentation, intent of Rules, 1

Hooks, slab bacon, 45

Hood. *See Ventilation systems, 77, 78, 86, 124, 125*

Hot holding of potentially hazardous food, 60

Hot water  
 quantity and availability, 106  
 sanitization of equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils, 82, 100

Hygienic practices of employees  
 food contamination prevention, 30-32, 43  
 hair restraints, 31-32  
 handling animals, prohibition, 32

Ice  
 defined as food, 38  
 exterior cooling, prohibition as ingredient, 46  
 source, 38  
 storage or display of food in contact with, 46

Ice units, separation of drains, design and construction, 80

Identity standards for food, 66

Illness of employee, investigation, 151-152

Illness prevention, intent of Rules, 1, 138

Imminent health hazard  
 ceasing operations and reporting, 141, 149  
 definition, 9

Immunocompromised persons.  
*See Highly susceptible Population, 8*

In-place cleaning. *See CIP, 2, 76-77*

Incinerators for solid waste, 117

Individual sewage disposal system, disposal through approved system, 113

Indoor areas, materials, 118, 126

Infection, employee, symptom, 23-24

Infectious agent, employee freedom from, removal of restriction, 26-28, 152

Ingredients, HACCP plan, 140

Ingredients, label information, 66

Injected, definition, 9

Insect control

- devices, design, and installation, 120-121
- food establishments, poisonous or toxic materials, 129-132
- maintenance, 126
- outer openings protected, 121
- See also Pest control*

Insects, dead or trapped, removal, 126

Inspection

- access to premises and records, 141, 143

Inspection, frequency

- establishing, 142-143
- performance- and risk-based, 142-143

Inspection port, enclosed water system, 111

Inspection report

- acknowledgment of receipt, 145
- documentation, 138, 144-150
- issuance, 138, 145
- public information, 145
- receipt, refusal to sign acknowledgment, 145

Installation

- equipment, 87
- plumbing system, 107-108

Institutional food service. *See Food establishment, highly susceptible population, 6-7, 8*

Interstate Certified Shellfish Shippers List, sources of molluscan shellfish, 34-35

Intestinal illness of employee, 23-24

Iodine solutions, chemical sanitization, 92

Jars. *See Single-use articles*

Jaundiced employee

- exclusions and restrictions, 25
- symptom, 24
- removal of exclusions and restrictions, 27

Jewelry, employees, prohibition exception, 31, 43

Juice, 9, 40, 57, 69

Junctures, floor and wall, coved and enclosed or sealed, cleanability, 119

Justification, variances, 138-139

Ketchup bottles. *See Single-use articles*

Kick plates, design, good repair & construction, 77, 89

Kitchenware

- definition, 9
- handling, 103-104

Knives, handling, 103-104, *Also see Tableware*

Label, common name on food container, 45

Labeling

- packaged food, 33, 66-67
- compliance with law, 33, 66-67
- poisonous or toxic materials and personal care items, 129

Lamb

- consumer self-service, 51
- rare or raw, consumer advisory, 54, 68, 69-70
- raw, storage, 44
- use of clean equipment, 93-94
- use of laundered gloves, 100

Landfills for solid waste, 117

Laundered cloth gloves, 48, 100

Laundering linens

- criteria, 100
- frequency, 100-101
- mechanical washing, 101
- methods, 100

Laundry facilities, use limitations, 101

Lavatories. *See Handwashing facilities*

Law, definition, 9

Lead limitation in ceramic, china, crystal, and decorative utensils, 73-74

Lesion, containing pus, 24

Light bulbs, protective shielding, 120

Lighting, intensity, 123-124

Linens and napkins, use limitation for food-contact surfaces, 47

Linens

- definition, 9
- laundering criteria, 100
- laundering frequency, 100-101
- laundering methods, 101
- mechanical washing methods, 101
- soiled, storage methods, 87, 101
- storage after cleaning, 87, 102
- storage prohibitions, 103

Liquid eggs, condition at receipt, 38

Liquid food or ice, dispensing equipment, design and construction, 78-79

Liquid food vending machines, waste receptacle, 83

Liquid waste, *Also see Sewage*

- drain lines, design and construction, 80
- other than sewage, disposal facility, 114
- products from vending machines, 83

Listeriosis, Reporting, 152

Litter, removal, 127

Living/sleeping quarters, separation, 22, 122

Livestock, definition, 9

Loading soiled items, warewashing machines, 97

Location, grease trap, 113

Lockers

- designation, 124
- location, 124
- using, 126

Lubricants, incidental food contact, criteria, 131

Lubricating food-contact surfaces, 102

- Maintenance *See also Operation and maintenance*  
 equipment, storage, 126-127  
 refuse areas and enclosures, 116, 127  
 tools, cleaning, 125
- Management and personnel  
 employee health, 23-28  
 hygienic practices, 30-32  
 personal cleanliness, 20, 30-31  
 supervision, 20-23
- Manager, food protection certified, 20
- Manual warewashing. *See Warewashing*
- Manufacturers' dating information, 61, 68
- Materials *See also Physical facilities*  
 construction and repair, surface  
 characteristics, 118-120  
 HACCP plan, 140  
 mobile water tank and mobile food  
 establishment water tank, 110-112, 113
- Mats, floor, cleanability, 119
- Meal portions, individual, from bulk container, 62
- Meats  
 cooking requirements, 52-55  
 cured, 63  
 customer self-service, 51  
 definition, 9  
 rare or raw, consumer advisory, 22, 54, 68, 69-70  
 raw, storage, 44  
 use of clean equipment, 93-94  
 use of laundered gloves, 48, 100
- Mechanical warewashing. *See Warewashing*
- Medical condition of employee, 23-28
- Medical history of ill employee, 151
- Medicines, employee, in food establishments,  
 restriction and storage, 132  
*See also Personal care items*
- Melons, cut. *See Potentially hazardous food definition, 11*
- Menu, claims, 67
- Menu items, consumer advisor, 68
- Meringue, 45
- mg/L, definition, 9
- Microwave ovens  
 cleaning frequency, 93-94, 96  
 cooking, 55  
 reheating food, requirements, 56  
 safety standards, 89
- Milk and milk products, dry, fluid, and frozen,  
 pasteurized at receipt, 38
- Milk, fluid, and milk products  
 cooling, 58-60  
 dispensing tube, 78-79, 93  
 raw, consumer advisory, 68  
 source, 34  
 temperature at receipt, 37
- Mixing valve, handwashing facility, 107
- Mobile facility, alternative water supply, 106-107
- Mobile food establishment  
 definition, 9  
 additional requirements, 133-135  
 readily moveable, 133  
 sewage holding tank, capacity and drainage, 134  
 water tank, inlet, 111-112  
 waste removal, 134
- Mobile water tank and mobile food establishment  
 water tank  
 design and construction, 111  
 flushing and disinfection, 112  
 materials, 110  
 numbers and capacities, 106, 133  
 operation and maintenance, 112-113
- Model inspection form, 147-149
- Modifications  
 Rule application, 138  
 conformance with approved procedures, 139
- Molluscan shellfish  
 definition, 9  
 lightly cooked or raw, consumer advisory, 68  
 original container, requirements, 40  
 packaging and identification, 38  
 shellfish, source, 34-35  
 shucked, original container, labeling, 38-40  
 tanks, use limitations, 80  
 tanks, variance, 80
- Molluscan shellstock  
 condition on receipt, 37-40, 40-42  
 cooling, 58-60  
 identification specifications, 39-42  
 temperature at receipt, 37
- Mollusk. *See Fish, 6*
- Mollusk shells, use limitation, 93
- Mops, drying, 126
- Mop sink, 108
- Mouthwash. *See Personal care items, 132*
- Moveability, case lot handling equipment, 84
- Moveable. *See Easily Moveable, 5, 133-134*
- Multiuse utensils and food-contact surfaces,  
 construction materials, characteristics, 73-75
- Mushrooms, wild, 35
- Mussels, lightly cooked or raw, consumer advisory, 68  
*See also Molluscan shellfish*
- Napkins, cloth, laundering frequency, 100-101  
 use limitation, 47  
*See also Linens*
- National Shellfish Sanitation Program  
 certification number, 2  
 Guide, 34
- Nitrates, nitrites, and salt for curing, variance  
 specifications, 63
- Nonconformance with Rules, documentation, 144-145
- Noncritical violation, time frame for correction, 150
- Nondrinking water, quality, 105-106
- Nonfood-contact surfaces  
 cleaning criteria, 77, 93  
 cleaning frequency, 96  
 construction materials, characteristics, 75  
 design and construction, 77
- Norovirus, 23, 24, 25, 26
- Notices, accept, 142 *See also Hearing Notice, 151*
- Nutrition labeling, 67
- Nuts in shell, storage, 45

- Odors
  - mechanical ventilation, 124
  - multiuse equipment materials, 73
  - refuse removal frequency, 117
  - single-service/use article materials, 75
- Off-premise
  - cleaning services for refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 115
  - delivery and consumption of potentially hazardous food, 7
- Oil equipment, hot, "V" threads & filters, 77
- On-site cleaning of returnables, 99
- Openings, to outdoors, protection against insects and rodents, 121
- Openings, vending machines, design & construction, 84
- Operating permit, food establishment
  - conditions for retention, responsibilities, 141-142
  - definition, 10
  - prerequisite, 141
  - posting, 141
  - remodeled establishment, issuance criteria, 141-142
  - timing, 141
- Operating plans and specifications, submission and approval, 139-140
- Operating procedures, standard
  - HACCP, 139-141
  - plans, 139-140
- Operation and maintenance
  - mobile water tank and mobile food establishment water tank, 110-111
  - physical facilities, 125-128
  - plumbing system, 109-113
  - sewage system, 113-114, 134
  - suspension for imminent health hazard, 149
- Organisms of public health concern
  - destruction, 52-57
  - growth limitation, 57-66
- Ostrich, 8, 13, 52
- Outdoor areas, materials, 118
- Outdoor refuse areas, curbed and graded to drain, 122
- Outdoor walking and driving surfaces, graded to drain, 122
- Outfitter operation, definition, 10
  - operations, 157
- Outside receptacles for refuse, recyclables, and returnables, design and construction, 114-115
- Outside storage of refuse, recyclables, and returnables, prohibitions, 116
- Oven
  - cooking temperature, 52-54
  - microwave, 55, 89, 96
- Overhead protection for outdoor food vending and servicing areas, 122, 135
- Overwraps, colored, for food, limitations, 66
- Ownership change, 142
- Oysters, lightly cooked or raw, consumer advisory, 68
  - See also Molluscan shellfish*
- Package integrity, 38
- Packaged, definition, 10
- Packaged food
  - labeling, 33
  - labels, compliance with law, 66-68
  - separation and segregation from unpackaged food, 43-44
- Packaging and identification of shucked molluscan shellfish, 38-40
- Packaging, reduced oxygen
  - conditions requiring a variance, 63-64
  - HACCP plan and variance criteria, 64-66, 138-141
- Pallets. *See Case lot handling equipment, 84*
- Parasite destruction in fish by freezing, 55-56
- Parts per million. *See mg/L, 9*
- Patrol dogs, 32, 127
- Performance-based frequency of inspection, 142
- Permit, definition, 10
- Permit holder
  - agreement, replacement of facilities or equipment, 141-142
  - definition, 10
  - posting in food establishment, responsibility, 141
  - responsibilities for permit retention, 141
  - See also Employee*
- Permit renewal, existing food establishment, 142
- Permit, suspending, revoking, modifying, or restricting, hearing officer's powers, 142, 151
- Permit to operate food establishment, 141
  - failure to have, 141-142
- Person, definition, 10
- Person in charge. *See also Employee*
  - assignment, 20
  - definition, 10
  - demonstration of knowledge, 20-22
  - duties, 22-23
  - employee responsibility for reporting illness, 23, 28
  - responsibility to report certain employee illness, 23, 28
  - responsibilities, rights, and authorities, explanation, 20-28
- Personal care items
  - definition, 10
  - first aid supplies, storage, 132
  - in food establishments, storage, 132
  - labeling and identification, 132
  - medicines, restriction and storage, 132
  - operational supplies and applications, 132
  - stock and retail sale, 132
- Personal cleanliness, 28-32
- Personal medications. *See Medicines, 132*
- Personnel, supervision, 20-23
- Pest control, 126
  - outer openings protected, 121
  - See also Insect control and Rodent control*



- Pesticides in food establishments
  - application, 130
  - bait stations, 131
  - restricted use pesticide, conditions of use, 129, 130
  - restricted use pesticide, criteria, 131
  - tracking powders, 131
  - See also Poisonous or toxic materials*
- Pests, dead or trapped, removal, 126
- Pets in group residence dining areas, restrictions, 127
- Pewter, use limitation for food-contact surfaces, 74
- pH
  - definition, 10
  - chemical sanitization of warewashing equipment, 91-92
- Physical facilities
  - cleaning
    - floors, dustless methods, 125
    - frequency and restrictions, 125
    - maintenance tools, preventing contamination, 125
    - ventilation systems, nuisance and discharge prohibition, 125
  - controlling pests, 126
  - definition, 11
  - design, construction, and installation, 118-122
  - dressing rooms and lockers, using, 124, 126
  - drying mops, 126
  - handwashing laboratories, maintaining and using, 122-123, 126
  - location and placement, 109, 124-125
  - maintaining premises, 127
  - maintenance and operation, 125-128
  - materials for construction and repair, 118
  - minimizing attractants and contaminants on floors, 125-126
  - numbers and capacities, 122-123
  - pests, dead or trapped, removal, 126
  - prohibiting animals, 127-128
  - repairing, 125
  - storage, of maintenance tools, 126-127
  - toilet room doors, closing, 126
- Pickle barrels. *See Single-use articles*
- Pinning. *See Injected, definition, 9*
- Plastic tubs, buckets. *See Single-use articles*
- Plates. *See Tableware*
- Plumbing fixture, definition, 11
- Plumbing system
  - air gap, 107
  - backflow prevention, 107, 108
  - conditioning device, design, 108
  - construction, 107
  - definition, 11
  - design, 107-108
  - device, water system, inspection and service, 109
  - handwashing laboratory, design and construction, 107, 108, 109
  - installation, 107
  - location and placement, 109
  - materials, 107
  - numbers and capacities, 108
  - operation and maintenance, 109-113
- Poisonous or toxic materials
  - bait stations, 131
  - boiler water additives, criteria, 130
  - chemical sanitizers, criteria, 130
  - chemicals for washing fruits and vegetables, criteria, 130
  - common name, 129
  - containers, prohibition for food use, 130
  - definition, 11
  - drying agents, criteria, 130-131
  - in food establishments, use conditions, 129-130
  - knowledge by person in charge, 21
  - lubricants, incidental food contact, criteria, 131
  - medication, first aid, personal care items, 10, 132
  - pesticides, application, 129, 131
  - restriction of presence and use in food establishments, 131
  - storage, separation, 129, 132
  - tracking powders, 131
  - See also Personal care items*
- Pooled eggs, cooking temperature, 53
- Pork
  - cooking requirements, 52, 53
  - consumer self-service, 50-51
  - rare or raw, consumer advisory, 68
  - raw, storage, 44
  - use of clean equipment, 90-94
  - use of laundered gloves, 48, 100
- Portable. *See Easily Moveable & Readily Moveable, 5, 9, 133-134*
- Potable water. *See Drinking water, 4, 105, 156, 157*
- Potentially hazardous food, definition, 11-13
- Poultry
  - cooking requirements, 52-53
  - customer self-service, 50-51
  - definition, 13
  - rare or raw, consumer advisory, 68
  - raw, storage, 43-44
  - use of clean equipment, 93-94
  - use of laundered gloves, 48, 100
- Precleaning equipment and utensils, 97
- Premises. *See also Physical facilities*
  - definition, 14
  - gaining access, 143-144
  - maintenance, 127
- Presentation of food, 66
- Preset tableware, handling, 104
- Pressure, water, 106
- Pressure spray, wet cleaning, 97
- Primal cut, definition, 14
  - storage on hooks or racks, 45
- Private home, unapproved food source, 33
  - food operations prohibited, 22, 122

- Probe-type price and identification tags,
  - See Utensil, 19*
- Public health protection, Rule application, 138
- Public information, inspection report, 145
- Public sewage treatment plant, disposal through approved facility, 113
- Public water system, definition, 14
- Pushcart, 14 *Also see Food Establishment, definition & Mobile Food Establishment*
  
- Quaternary ammonium compounds, chemical sanitization, 792
  
- Racks
  - case lot handling, 84
  - meat storage, 45
  - warewasher, 82, 90-91, 97
- Rainwater, disposal facility, 114, *Also See Sewage*
- Rapid
  - cooling, 58-60
  - growth. *See Potentially hazardous food, 11*
  - reheating, 56-57
- Ratites, 8, 13, 52
- Ready-to-eat food, definition, 14-15
- Ready-to-eat foods, consumer self-service,
  - utensils and dispensers, 51
- Ready-to-eat potentially hazardous food
  - date marking, 60-62
  - disposition, 62-63
  - handling, 29
- Reassembly of equipment after cleaning, 102
- Receptacles for refuse, recyclables, and returnables
  - capacity and availability, 114-115
  - cleaning, 114, 116
  - covering, 114, 116
  - design and construction, 114
  - drain plugs, 116
  - equipment and storage, 114-115
  - location, 115, 125
  - maintenance, 116
- Receptacles for removal of refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 125
- Reconstituted food cooling, 59
- Records
  - availability, responsibility of permit holder, 143
  - fish, freezing raw, 33
  - HACCP, 139-141
  - HACCP plan conformance, failure to demonstrate, 139, 141, 149
  - molluscan shellstock, 38-42
  - water system service schedule, 106, 109-110
- Recyclables, 114-116, 117 *Also See Refuse, 117*
- Recycling facilities, 117
- Redeeming machines, location, 115
- Reduced oxygen packaging
  - conditions requiring variance, 64-66
  - definition, 15-16
  - HACCP plan & variance criteria, 64-66, 138-141
- Refilling facilities, 99
- Refilling returnables, 49, 99
- Refills in consumer self-service, using clean tableware, 48
- Refrigeration, cooling and cold holding, 58-60
- Refusal of access
  - application for inspection order, 144
  - reporting, 144
- Refusal to sign acknowledgment of inspection report receipt, 145
- Refuse areas and enclosures, maintenance, 116
- Refuse, definition, 16
- Refuse, recyclables, and returnables
  - cleaning implements and supplies, 115
  - design and construction, 114
  - facilities, on the premises, 114-116
  - facilities for disposal and recycling, 117
  - indoor storage area, design, 114
  - location, 115
  - outdoor enclosure, construction, 114, 122
  - outdoor storage areas, construction materials, 114
  - outdoor storage surface, design and construction, 114, 122
  - removal, 117
  - storage, operation, and maintenance, 114-116
  - storage areas
    - equipment, and receptacles, location, 114, 122
    - rooms and receptacles, capacity and availability, 114-115
  - storage prohibitions, 116
  - toilet room receptacle, covered, 115
- Regulatory authority
  - definition, 16
  - responsibilities for permit issuance, 141
- Reheating
  - food from a hermetically sealed container, 56
  - hot holding, temperature requirements, 56-57
  - immediate service, temperature requirement, 56, 57
  - ready-to-eat food, requirements, 56
- Reinstatement
  - excluded or restricted employee, 26-28, 152
- Releasing food from hold order, 150
- Remedies, administrative, 142-145, 151
- Reminder, 16, 68
- Repair, good, physical facilities, 125
- Reporting, disease and medical condition
  - by food employee and applicant, 23, 28
  - by permit holder, 141, 152
  - by person in charge, 23
- Reporting, imminent health hazard
  - by permit holder, 149, 152-153
- Reservice of unopened packaged food and unused food, prohibition, 51-52, 71
- Residence prohibition, 22, 33, 122

- Responsibilities
  - permit holder for ceasing operations, 141, 149
  - permit holder for permit retention, 141-142
  - person in charge, duties and authorities, 20-23
  - regulatory authority for permit issuance, 141
- Restaurant. *See Food establishment*
- Restrict, definition, 16
- Restricted egg, definition, 16
- Restricted use pesticide, definition & criteria, 16, 131
- Restriction
  - employee, release, 26-28, 152
  - infected or diseased employee, 25-26, 151
- Restriction order
  - infected or diseased employee, 151
  - service, 151
- Restrictions
  - employees, removal, 26-28, 152
  - ill employees, 25-26, 151
- Restroom facilities, *See toilet rooms*
- Resumption of operations, 149
- Retail food store. *See Food establishment, 6-7*
- Retention tank. *See Sewage, holding tank, 134*
- Retirement home. *See Group residence, 8*
- Returnables, *See also Refuse*
  - on-site cleaning and refilling, 99
  - refilling, 49
- Rights, recipients of orders or decisions, 150-151
- Rinsing procedures, equipment and utensils, 98-99
- Risk, definition, 17
- Risk-based frequency of inspection, 142
- Roadside Food Vendor, definition, 17
- Roasts, beef and pork
  - minimum holding times for cooking, 53, 54, 57
  - oven parameters for cooking, 53, 54
  - reheating, 57
- Rodent control, 126 *See also Pest control*
  - harborage, free of, 127
  - in food establishments, poisonous or toxic materials, 131
  - outer openings protected, 121
- Rodents, dead or trapped, removal, 126
- Roe. *See Fish, 6*
- Roofs, protective barrier, 122
- Rooms. *See Physical facilities*
  
- Safe material, definition, 17
- Salad bar, clean tableware sign, 48
- Salad bars, monitoring by food employees, 51
- Salmonella Enteritidis***, 70
- Salmonella typhi***
  - cause of disease outbreak & employee illness, 23-26
  - employee illness, reporting, 23
  - infection, conditions for employee restriction or exclusion, 25-26
  - reporting responsibility of person in charge, 23,28
- Salmonella typhi***-free, removal of restriction,26-28,152
- Salmonella typhi***-positive specimen culture, 25
  
- Salmonid fish, 67
- Sample report, private water system, 106
- Sampling, water, nonpublic system, 105
- Sanitization *See Poisonous or toxic materials,130-131*
  - chemical, of warewashing equipment,91-92,100
  - definition, 17
  - food contact surfaces, equipment and utensils, 99, 100
  - hot water temperatures, for warewashing equipment, 90-91
  - pressure, mechanical warewashing equipment, 91
  - sanitizers, chemical, determining concentration, 91-92
  - sanitizer test kit, 86, 92
- Sanitizing solutions, equipment and utensil
  - chemical criteria, 130-131
  - rinsing procedures, 98-99
  - testing devices, availability, 86
  - wiping cloth storage, 47-48
- Sanitizing solutions, hand, 29-30
- Scallops. *See Molluscan shellfish*
- Screening
  - backflow prevention device, 108
  - outer openings protected, 122
  - tank vent, 111
  - vending machines, 84
  - water filter, 108
- Seafood. *See Fish*
- Sealed, definition, 17
- Seeing Eye dog. *See Service animal, 17, 32, 127-128*
- Self-draining warewashing sinks and drainboards, 83
  
- Self-service
  - clean tableware for refills, 48-49
  - consumer, protection from contamination, 50-51
  - handling of single-service and single-use articles, 103-104
  - utensil availability, 86
- "Sell by" date, 39, 60-62, 65
- Sentry dogs. *See Patrol dogs, 32, 127*
- Service Animal, 17, 29, 32, 127
- Service sinks
  - availability, 108, 124
  - plumbing system, numbers and capacity, 108
  - use limitation, 29
- Servicing area
  - definition, 17
  - outdoor, overhead protection, 122, 135
- Serving dishes. *See Tableware*
- Sewage
  - definition, 17
  - disposal, conveying, 113
  - disposal system, approved, design and construction, 113
  - holding tank, mobile, 134
- Sewage, other liquid wastes, and rainwater
  - backflow prevention, 113
  - conveying, 113, 134

disposal facility, 113, 135  
 drainage, 114, 134  
 establishment drainage system, design  
     and installation, 113, 134  
 mobile holding tank, 134  
 removal from mobile food establishment, 134-135  
 retention, 134  
 Shatter-resistant light bulbs, 120  
 Shelf life, variance specifications, 65  
 Shellfish, molluscan. *See Molluscan shellfish*  
 Shellfish control authority, definition, 17  
 Shells, use limitation, 93  
 Shellstock  
     definition, 17  
     maintaining identification, 39-42  
 Shielding, light, 120  
 Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*, 18  
**Shigella** spp.  
     cause of employee illness and disease  
         outbreak, 23-26  
     employee illness, reporting responsibility of  
         person in charge, 23-25, 28  
     infection, conditions for employee restriction or  
         exclusion, 25-26, 151  
     removal of restriction or exclusion, 26-28, 152  
**Shigella** spp.-positive specimen culture, 25  
 Shucked shellfish, definition, 18  
 Shutoff device, vending machine, 80-81, 83  
 Signs, Buffet Table & Salad Bar, 48  
 Signs, Heimlich Maneuver, 154  
 Single-service and single-use articles  
     construction materials, characteristics, 75  
     definition, 18  
     handling, 103  
     prohibitions, 75  
     required use, 93  
     reuse limitation, 93  
     storage after cleaning, 102  
 Sink compartment requirements, manual warewashing,  
     84-86  
 Sink, handwashing. *See handwashing facilities*  
 Sinks, warewashing  
     cleaning agents, 90  
     cleaning frequency, 89  
     compartments, 84-86  
     sanitization, 90, 91-92  
     self-draining, 83  
     use limitations, 89-90  
 Slacking  
     definition, 18  
     potentially hazardous frozen food, conditions, 57  
 Slash resistant gloves, 48  
 Sleeping quarters. *See Living/sleeping quarters*, 22, 122  
 Smoking. *See Tobacco use by employees*, 31  
 Smoking food, 63  
 Smooth, definition, 18  
 Sneeze guards, 50  
 Sneezing, coughing, or runny nose by employees,  
     food contamination prevention, 29, 31, 42  
 Soap. *See Cleaning agents*, 122  
 Soiled tableware, handling, 97  
 Solder, use limitation for food-contact surfaces, 74  
 Source, approved  
     drinking water, 105, 136, 156  
     food, 33-37, 155, 157  
     shellfish, 33-35, 38-42  
 Spacing  
     carpet installation, 119  
     equipment installation, 87  
     toxic material separation, 129, 132  
 Spatulas, use to avoid contaminating food, 42  
 Specialized Processes, 63  
 Specimen analysis, employee transmission  
     of foodborne disease, 151  
 Specimen cultures of employee infected with  
     *Salmonella typhi*, 25, 27, 152  
 Sponges, use limitation, 74  
 Spoons, handling, 103-104 *Also See Tableware*  
 Spot cleaning. *See Dustless cleaning methods*, 125  
 Sprouts, seed, 11, 70 *See Potentially hazardous food*  
 Stainless steel. *See Cleanability*, 76; *Easily cleanable*, 4  
 Standards of identity, 66  
 Stationary food establishments, permit, 141  
 Steam  
     cleaning equipment, 115  
     mixing valves, 107  
     tables, temperature measurement, 81  
     ventilation, 124  
 Stitch pumping. *See Injected*, 9  
 Stirrers. *See Single-service articles*, 103  
 Steak tartare, 70  
 Steak, whole muscle intact beef, 19, 33, 54  
 Stock and retail sale of poisonous or toxic materials and  
     personal care items, storage and display, 132  
 Storage  
     clean equipment, utensils, linens, & single-  
         service and single-use articles, 102-103  
     first aid supplies in food establishments, 132  
     food in contact with water or ice, 46  
     maintenance equipment, 126-127  
     medicines in food establishments, 132  
     methods for soiled linens, 101  
     poisonous or toxic materials, separation, 129  
     refuse, recyclables, and returnables, operation  
         and maintenance, 115-117  
 Storage and display of items for stock and retail sale,  
     separation, 132  
 Storage areas for refuse, recyclables, and returnables  
     capacity and availability, 114-115  
     designated, 125  
     location, 115  
 Storage cabinet location, contamination prevention, 87  
 Storing food to prevent cross contamination, 43-45  
 Straws. *See Single-service articles*, 103  
 Street foods. *See Food establishment, Mobile*, 6-7  
 Studs, joists, and rafters, cleanability, 118, 120

- Stuffing, cooking, 53
- Sulfites & Sulfiting Agents, 45-46 *See Additives*
- Summary permit suspension
  - disease intervention measure, 151
- Summary suspension of operations for imminent health hazard, 149, 151
- Supervision of personnel
  - demonstration of knowledge, 20-22
  - person in charge, 20, 22-23, 25-28
- Support animal
  - definition, *See Service Animal, 17*
  - care and handling, 32
  - presence in dining and sales area, 127-128
- Surface characteristics
  - indoor areas, 118
  - outdoor areas, 118
- Susceptible population
  - exclusion of ill employee serving, 25
  - frequency of inspections, 143
  - potentially hazardous food, 54, 68, 69-71
- Sweeping, dust-arresting compounds, 125
  
- Table-mounted equipment
  - definition, 18
  - elevation, 88
- Tablecloths. *See Linens*
- Tableware *See also Single-service articles*
  - consumer self-service, buffets, 23, 48, 51
  - definition, 18
  - handling, 103-104
  - preset, handling, 104
  - soiled and clean, handling, 48, 104
- Tag on food, shellstock, 39-40, 41-42
- Tag/label, for molluscan shellstock
  - record keeping, 40, 41
  - requirements, 39-42
- Tags, probe-type, 19
- Take-home food containers, refilling, limitations, 49
- TCS, definition, 19
- Temperature, Food
  - cold and hot food holding, 60
  - cooking, 52-55
  - cooking, comminuted meats, 52
  - cooking, microwave, 55
  - cooling, 58-60
  - plant foods, 55
  - receiving, 37
  - reheating, 56-57
  - raw animal foods, 52-55
  - roasts, beef, corned beef, pork, 53-54
- Temperature, Warewashing
  - chemical sanitization, 91-92, 100
  - hot water sanitization, 90-91, 100
  - sanitization, manual, 90, 100
  - sanitization, mechanical, 90-91, 100
  - wash water, manual, 90
  - wash water, mechanical, 90
- Temperature measuring devices
  - accuracy, 77, 93
  - calibration, 92-93
  - definition, 19
  - design and construction, 76, 81, 86
  - food, accessibility, 86
  - food storage unit air, 78, 81
  - probe, small diameter, 86
  - required & location, 81, 82
  - warewashing machines, 81
  - warewashing, manual, accessibility, 82
- Tempered water, handwashing facility, 107, 137, 156, 157
- Temporary facility, water availability, 106-107, 136-137
- Temporary food establishment
  - definition, 19
  - construction materials, 136-137
  - permit, 141
- Testing devices for sanitizing solutions, availability, 86
- Thawing potentially hazardous frozen food, conditions, 57-58
- Thermistor, thermocouple, thermometer.
  - See Temperature measuring device, 19, 77, 92-93*
- Three compartment sink. *See Sink compartments, 84-85*
- Thunnus species, 56
- Time and temperature control, 57-63
- Time as public health control for potentially hazardous food, 63
- Time frame
  - correction of critical violation, 145, 149-150
  - noncritical violation, 150
  - reinspection, 150
- Tobacco use by employees, food contamination prevention, 231, 124
- Tofu, immersion in ice or water, 46
- Toilet rooms
  - convenience and accessibility, 124, 155
  - doors, closing, 126
  - enclosed, design and installation, 121
  - numbers, 108, 123
  - receptacle for sanitary napkins, 115
- Toilet tissue, availability, 123
- Toiletries. *See Personal care items*
- Toilets & urinals, number & cleanability, 107, 108, 155
- Tongs, use to avoid contaminating food, 42
- Toothpaste. *See Personal care items, 10, 132*
- Toothpicks. *See Single-service articles, 103*
- Towels, availability, 123, 137, 157
- Toxic *See Poisonous or toxic materials, 129-132*
- Tracking powder, 131
- Trade secrets, protection, 141
- Training, employee, documentation, 23, 42, 65, 71, 140
- Training plan, food safety, employees and supervisors, HACCP plan, 140
- Transport
  - case lot moving, 84
  - game animals, 37
  - insulated containers, 81

- refuse vehicles, 117
- sewage vehicles, 113
- soiled linens, 101
- transportation vehicle, 6, 7, 17
- water vehicles, 106
- Trichinosis, reporting, 152
- Trash. *See Refuse*
- Tumblers. *See Tableware, 18*
- Tuna, 56
- Turtle. *See Fish, 6*
- Two compartment sink. *See Sink compartments*
  
- Unnecessary
  - items, 116, 126, 127
  - ledges, projections and crevices, 77
  - persons, 22
- Urinals, numbers, 108, 123
- USFDA, *See FDA, definition, 5*
- USDA, definition, 19
- "Use by" date, 60-62, 65 *See also Date marking*
- Utensils
  - air-drying, 101
  - cast iron, use limitation, 73
  - ceramic, china, crystal, and decorative,
    - lead limitation, 73-74
  - cleaning criteria, 93
  - cleaning frequency, 93-96
  - cleaning methods, 96-99
  - consumer self-service, availability, 51, 86
  - definition, 19
  - design and construction, durability and strength, 75-76
  - galvanized metal, use limitation, 74
  - in-use storage, 47
  - maintenance and operation, 92-93
  - multiuse, construction materials, 73-75
  - sanitization, 90-92, 99, 100
  - servicing, for consumer self-service operations,
    - 51, 86
  - storage after cleaning, 102-103
  - storage between use, 47
  - wet cleaning methods, 97
  - wood, use limitation, 74-75
- Utility lines, cleanability, 118
  
- "V" threads, use limitation for food-contact surfaces,
  - 77, 111
- Vacuum packaging. *See Reduced oxygen packaging, 15-16, 64-66, 138-141*
- Variance
  - cooking raw animal foods, 52-55
  - conformance with approved procedures, 139
  - definition, 19
  - documentation and justification, 138-139
  - HACCP plan, 139-141
  - modifications & waivers, Rules application, 138
  - molluscan shellfish tanks, 80
  - rationale, 138
  - requirement for specialized food processing
    - methods, 63-66
  - shellstock, maintaining identification, 39-40
  - sprouting seeds or beans, 64
- Vegetables, raw
  - clean utensils, use of, 94
  - cooking for hot holding, 55
  - washing, 46
  - whole or cut, immersion in ice or water, 46
  - whole, uncut, raw, storage, 44-45, 46
- Vehicles for removal of refuse, recyclables, and returnables, 117
- Vending machines
  - automatic shutoff, 80-81
  - can openers, design and construction, 80
  - condiments, packaging to prevent contamination, 50
  - definition, 19
  - design and construction of vending stage closure, 79
  - doors and openings, design and construction, 84
  - liquid waste products, 83
  - location, definition, 19
  - potentially hazardous food, original container, 50
  - refuse receptacles in, 114
  - temperature, 81
- Ventilation, mechanical, 124
- Ventilation systems
  - capacity, 86, 124
  - cleaning, nuisance and discharge prohibition, 125
  - exhaust vents, design and installation, 125
  - hood, adequacy, 86
  - hood filters, 77
  - drip prevention, design and construction, 78
- Verification of correction of critical violation, 150
- Vermin. *See Insect control, Pest control, Rodent control*
- Vibrio infection, 152
- Violations, critical
  - documentation and verification of correction, 150
  - documentation of findings, 144-145
  - history of, role in frequency of inspections, 142
  - inspection and correction, 141-146
  - uncorrected, 150
  - noncritical, time frame for correction, 150
  - timely correction, 149
- Virus. *See Disease outbreaks caused by, 24, 152-153*
- Vomiting, employee symptom, 23, 25, 26
  
- Waivers
  - Rule requirements, 138
  - conformance with approved procedures, 139
- Walk-in refrigerator, carpeting prohibition, 118
- Walking surfaces. *See Surface characteristics, 118*
- Wall and ceiling coverings and coatings,
  - cleanability, 118-120
- Walls, exterior, protective barrier, 122

- Warewashing
  - definition, 19
  - manual, sink compartment requirements, 84-86, 136, 155, 157
  - manual, temperature measuring devices, accessibility, 86
- Warewashing equipment
  - chemical sanitizer concentration, 91-92
  - chemical sanitizer test kit, 92
  - clean solutions, 90
  - cleaning agents, 90
  - manual
    - alternative, 97-98, 136, 157
    - chemical sanitization, 91-92
    - detergent-sanitizers for chemical sanitization, 85, 92, 98
    - heaters and baskets, 82
    - hot water sanitization temperatures, 82, 90
    - wash solution temperature, 90
  - mechanical
    - chemical sanitization, 91-92
    - hot water sanitization temperatures, 90-91
    - pressure measuring device, 78
    - sanitization pressure, 91
    - wash solution temperature, 90
- Warewashing machines
  - data plate operating specifications, 82
  - drain connection, 113
  - flow pressure valve, 83
  - internal baffles, 82
  - loading of soiled items, 97
  - manufacturers' operating instructions, 82, 89
  - sanitizer level indicator, 83
  - temperature measuring devices, 82
- Warewashing sinks
  - alternative uses, 89-90
  - and drainboards, self-draining, 83
- Wash solution temperature, warewashing equipment, 90
- Washers/dryers, clothes, availability, 87
- Washing
  - mechanical methods, linens, 101
  - procedures, equipment food-contact surfaces and utensils, 97-98
  - raw fruits and vegetables, 46
  - times for employees, 28-29
- Waste, liquid. *See Sewage, 17, 113-114, 134-135*
- Waste, solid. *See Refuse, 114-117, 122*
- Waste receptacle for disposable towels, 115
- Waste retention tank, flushing, 134
- Water
  - alternative supply, 106-107, 137
  - distribution, delivery, and retention, 106-107
  - drinking, definition, 4
  - exemption, 134
  - hot, quantity and availability, 106, 156
  - inlet/outlet, protective device, 111, 112, 133
  - lack of, 149
  - non-drinking, 105
  - potable, 4, 135, 157
  - pressure, 106
  - quality, 106, 133, 137, 156, 157
    - sample report, 106
    - sampling, 105
    - standards, 105
  - quantity and availability, 106, 133, 136-137, 156, 157
  - source
    - approved system, 105, 133, 136-137
    - bottled drinking, 105, 106, 137
    - capacity, 106, 133
    - disinfection, 105, 112, 113
    - knowledge by person in charge, 21
    - system flushing, 105, 112
    - storage or display of food in contact with, 46
- Water activity ( $a_w$ ), definition, 1
- Water conditioning device, 108
- Water reservoir of fogging devices, cleaning, 110
- Water supply
  - alternative supply, 106-107, 136-137
  - system, prohibition of cross connection, 109
- Water system, compressed air filter, 112
- Water system device, inspection and service, 109-110
- Water systems, public and nonpublic, 105
- Water tank (mobile food establishment)
  - hose, construction and identification, 111-112
  - inlet/outlet
    - and hose fitting, protection, 112, 133
    - sloped to drain, 111
    - use limitation of "V" type threads, 111
  - pump, and hoses, dedicated use, 112
  - vent, protected, 111
- Watertight joint, equipment openings, 78
- Water treatment device, 108, 109
- Wet cleaning methods, equipment and utensils, 97
- Wet storage
  - food in contact with water and ice, 46
  - molluscan shellfish, tanks, 80
  - utensils, 47
  - wiping cloths, 47, 48, 102
- Wetting agents, 97
- Whole muscle, intact beef, 19, 33, 54
- Wicker wood, 74
- Windows, tight-fitting, 121
- Wiping cloths
  - air-drying locations, 102
  - laundry, 100-101
  - sanitizers, 47, 102, 130
  - use for one purpose, 47-48
- Wood, use limitation for food-contact surfaces, 74-75
- Work clothes. *See Clothing, outer, 31*
- Wound, infected. *See Lesion, containing pus, 24*
- Wrapped food *See also Packaged, definition, 10*
  - honestly presented, 66
  - preventing contamination, 44
- Wrapped tableware, handling, 103-104

